

# Configuration Guide for SAS<sup>®</sup> 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS<sup>®</sup>



## Copyright Notice

The correct bibliographic citation for this manual is as follows: SAS Institute Inc., *Configuration Guide for SAS® 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS®*, Cary, NC: SAS Institute Inc., 2011.

**Configuration Guide for SAS® 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS®**  
Copyright © 2011, SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC, USA.

All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, by any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher, SAS Institute Inc. Limited permission is granted to store the copyrighted material in your system and display it on terminals, print only the number of copies required for use by those persons responsible for installing and supporting the SAS programming and licensed programs for which this material has been provided, and to modify the material to meet specific installation requirements. The SAS Institute copyright notice must appear on all printed versions of this material or extracts thereof and on the display medium when the material is displayed. Permission is not granted to reproduce or distribute the material except as stated above.

U.S. Government Restricted Rights Notice. Use, duplication, or disclosure of the software by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 Commercial Computer Software-Restricted Rights (June 1987).

SAS Institute Inc., SAS Campus Drive, Cary, North Carolina 27513.

SAS and all other SAS Institute Inc. product or service names are registered trademarks or trademarks of SAS Institute Inc. in the USA and other countries.

® indicates USA registration.

Other brand and product names are trademarks of their respective companies.

# Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1 — Setting Up SAS 9.1.3 Foundation .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Installing SAS Remote Help for z/OS .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Implementing SAS TSO Support .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Architectural Changes Overview.....</b>	<b>4</b>
Threaded Kernel.....	4
SAS Entry Points .....	4
Return Codes.....	5
TK Options .....	6
TK Use of HFS.....	7
TKMVSJNL DDNAME.....	8
Support for Environment Variables on z/OS .....	8
<b>Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Selecting a Bundled Configuration.....</b>	<b>15</b>
z/OS non-LPA (ENTRY=SASB).....	16
z/OS LPA (ENTRY=SASLPA) .....	16
<b>Installing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation into the LPA/ELPA .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP.....</b>	<b>18</b>
Recommended Procedures .....	18
Overview and Software Requirements.....	18
Overview .....	18
Software Requirements .....	19
Configuring SAS to Communicate with TCP/IP.....	19
1. CA UNICENTER: TCPaccess Notes .....	19
2. Make the SAS Transient Library Available.....	20
3. Verify TCP/IP Stack definition.....	22
4. Verify System and USS Process Limits .....	22
5. Verify TCP/IP Host name Configuration.....	23
6. Verify TCP/IP Configuration Files affecting SAS.....	24
7. Verify Host Name Resolution .....	28
8. Customizing UNIX System Services (USS) - Open Edition.....	29
9. Setting up a Customized SAS Configuration.....	30
10. Diagnosing Configuration Problems.....	32
<b>Customizing Your SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Customizing Your NEWS File .....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Installing the SAS 9.1.3 SVC Routine.....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Installing the SAS SMF Exit .....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Installing UNIX File System Components .....</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform .....</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Locating Hot Fixes .....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Chapter 2 — Post-Installation Configuration for National Language Support (NLS) .....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Chinese, Japanese, and Korean DBCS Support.....</b>	<b>51</b>
DBCS System Option .....	51
DBCSLANG System Option .....	51
DBCSTYPE System Option .....	51
Asian Font Catalogs .....	52
Specifying the Font Catalog in a SAS Session for Traditional Chinese Fonts .....	52

<b>European Language Support .....</b>	<b>52</b>
Shipping Map for Countries based on Encoded Media .....	53
Using NONLSCOMPATMODE versus NLSCOMPATMODE .....	54
New-Line Character and Line-Feed Character .....	54
Configuring Your System for Locale .....	55
Changing the Default LOCALE Option Setting.....	55
Running SAS in a Different Locale.....	55
Additional Information .....	56
Locale Setup on the Remote Server .....	56
Devmaps and Keymaps for SAS/GRAPH Software.....	57
<b>Chapter 3 — Installing SAS Service Packs for z/OS .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Installing a Service Pack or Adding a New SAS System Product with a Service Pack .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Copying Staged Libraries to Production.....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Post-Installation Steps.....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Service Pack Verification .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Appendix A — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS .....</b>	<b>65</b>
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	65
Using the NATURAL Security Interface .....	65
Using the Samples.....	66
SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface.....	66
NATURAL Date and Time Support .....	66
Reentrancy .....	67
<b>Appendix B — Implementing SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB Software.....</b>	<b>69</b>
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	69
Using the Samples.....	69
SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface.....	69
<b>Appendix C — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface Interface to CA-IDMS.....</b>	<b>71</b>
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	71
Step 1: Update your SAS CLIST (optional) .....	71
Step 2: Update your SAS cataloged procedure (optional) .....	71
SAS/ACCESS DATA Step Interface Enhancement.....	72
<b>Appendix D — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to DB2 .....</b>	<b>73</b>
Defining the Interface to DB2 and DB2 Users .....	73
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	74
Creating and Loading the Sample Tables .....	75
SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface.....	76
Special Consideration for Using the RRS Attachment Facility. ....	76
<b>Appendix E — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS-DL/I .....</b>	<b>79</b>
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	79
Verifying Installation of the SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS.....	80
SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface.....	81

<b>Appendix F — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Oracle.....</b>	<b>83</b>
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure (required) .....	83
Creating and Loading the Sample Tables (optional) .....	84
<b>Appendix G — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to R/3.....</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>Appendix H — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to SYSTEM 2000.....</b>	<b>89</b>
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	89
<b>Appendix I — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata .....</b>	<b>91</b>
Defining the Interface to Teradata .....	91
Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure .....	91
Creating and Loading the Sample Tables (optional) .....	92
Configuration for FastExporting (optional) .....	92
<b>Appendix J — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/ASSIST Software .....</b>	<b>93</b>
Adding a Master Profile .....	93
Installing Sample DB2 Tables and a Sample Query Manager .....	94
<b>Appendix K — Installing the BMDP Interface .....</b>	<b>97</b>
Introduction .....	97
Installation of the BMDP Interface .....	97
<b>Appendix L — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/CONNECT Software .....</b>	<b>99</b>
Configuring SAS/CONNECT .....	99
<b>1. Communication Access Methods supported for SAS/CONNECT on z/OS ...</b>	<b>99</b>
A. System Configuration for the TCP Access Method .....	99
B. System Configuration XMS (Cross Memory Services) Access Method .....	100
<b>2. Storing and Locating SAS/CONNECT Script Files .....</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>3. Types of connections available with SAS/CONNECT on z/OS.....</b>	<b>100</b>
SAS/CONNECT Basic Telnet session .....	100
SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS .....	101
Benefits to Using the Spawner:.....	101
SAS/CONNECT Spawner Security Configuration.....	101
Security Requirements for Client/User .....	101
RACF Security .....	102
Setting up the SAS/CONNECT Spawner Procedure .....	103
Defining the SAS Startup Shell Script .....	105
Starting/Stopping the SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS Program .....	107
SAS/CONNECT to the same multi-process machine on z/OS .....	108
System Configuration for SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor machine .....	108
Considerations for Using XMS with SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor Machine .....	109
<b>Appendix M — Post-Installation Setup of SAS Enterprise Miner Server Software.....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>Installing SAS Enterprise Miner Server Software.....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>Configuring SAS Enterprise Miner Server Software .....</b>	<b>111</b>
Setup Default Remote Data Library .....	111
Provide Information to Configure SAS Enterprise Miner Client Software.....	111
Testing the Server Install .....	112

<b>Appendix N — Implementing SAS Fraud Management Software .....</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>Special Files for Use with the Controller Software .....</b>	<b>113</b>
Customizing the Configuration File for the Controller .....	113
<b>System Configuration .....</b>	<b>113</b>
Creating the Controller Environment .....	113
Creating the Monitor Agent Environment .....	114
Creating the SAS Scoring Engine Environment .....	114
Testing the SAS Fraud Management Installation .....	114
Customizing RAPTCMD .....	115
<b>CICS REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>115</b>
CICS ADAPTER: RXMSAPI .....	115
<b>Appendix O — Implementing SAS/GRAPH Software .....</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Understanding the Organization of this Appendix .....</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Part 1 — Accessing the SAS/GRAPH Maps Data Sets .....</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Part 2 — Customizing Devices .....</b>	<b>117</b>
Setting up a SAS/GRAPH Translate Table .....	117
Using SAS/GRAPH Software with ASCII Terminals and ASCII Terminal Emulators .....	117
Using SAS/GRAPH Software with ASCII Printers .....	118
Installing the Linkable Driver .....	118
Using SAS/GRAPH Software with IBM 3270-Type Terminals and 3270 Emulators .....	119
Using SAS/GRAPH Software with IBM 3287, 3268, and 4224 Printers .....	119
Using SAS/GRAPH Software with GDDM .....	119
<b>Part 3 — Setting Up and Modifying Device Catalogs .....</b>	<b>120</b>
How Device Catalogs Are Used .....	120
How and When to Modify Catalog Entries .....	120
<b>Part 4 — Device HELP Screens .....</b>	<b>122</b>
<b>Part 5 — JAVAIMG – Server-side Java Graphs .....</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>Appendix P — Post-Installation Configuration for SAS Integration Technologies Software .....</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>Appendix Q — Installing SAS/IntrNet Software .....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>Prerequisites .....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>Documentation .....</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>CGI Tools .....</b>	<b>127</b>
1. Install the CGI Tools on the Web server .....	127
Testing the Application Broker .....	128
Using htmSQL .....	128
2. Configure a Default Application Dispatcher Service .....	129
3. Starting, Stopping and Removing the Default Service .....	131
Starting the Service .....	131
Testing the Service .....	131
Stopping the Service .....	133
Removing the Service .....	133
4. Configure Additional Services .....	133
<b>Java Tools .....</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>Appendix R - Configuring SAS IT Resource Management .....</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>SAS IT Resource Management Functionality .....</b>	<b>135</b>
SAS IT Resource Management Integration with Other SAS IT Management Solutions .....	135
SAS IT Resource Management Configuration .....	135

<b>Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 2.7 .....</b>	<b>135</b>
Migration Considerations .....	135
Installation Customizations .....	136
Installation Checklist .....	136
Installing or Upgrading MXG (Recommended) .....	136
Customization of SAS IT Resource Management Server (Required) .....	138
Site Library Considerations (Review Required) .....	138
Modifying the Pointer to the Default SITELIB Library .....	139
Starting SAS IT Resource Management .....	139
From the TSO READY Prompt .....	139
From Within the SAS System .....	139
Considerations following a Staged Installation (Action C) .....	140
Considerations Following Delete SAS Staging Libraries (Action E) .....	140
<b>Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 .....</b>	<b>140</b>
SAS IT Resource Management Documentation .....	141
Installation Checklist .....	141
Server-Tier Modifications .....	141
Client-Tier Modifications .....	142
Mid-Tier Modifications .....	142
Server-Tier Modifications .....	142
Migration Considerations .....	142
Installing or Upgrading MXG (Recommended) .....	142
Ensure that the SVC is Installed .....	144
Ensure UNIX File System Components are Installed .....	144
Ensure that the Java Platform is Configured for Use with SAS Software .....	144
Modify the JREOPTIONS .....	145
Create a Custom Autoexec File .....	146
Additional Modifications to the SAS Configuration Files Required for IT Resource Management 3.1.1 .....	146
Verify RACF OMVS Segment and ASSIZEMAX Settings .....	147
Complete the Pre-installation Tasks for the SAS Servers .....	148
Configure the SAS Servers .....	148
Edit the <code>configuration.properties</code> File .....	149
Run the <code>deploy_IA.sh</code> Script .....	149
Verify the Results of Running the Script .....	149
Optimizing Memory Allocation for the SAS Metadata Server .....	150
Create and Perform Some of the Steps in the <code>instructions.html</code> File .....	150
Update Default Authorizations .....	151
Client-Tier Modifications .....	152
Tuning the SAS Data Integration Studio Invocation .....	152
Apply Client-Tier Hot Fixes .....	152
Mid-Tier Modifications .....	152
Configure SAS Web Report Studio for use with SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 .....	152
Create a New Subdirectory Off the Top-Level in WebDAV .....	152
Add <code>/sasdav/ITMS</code> as an Available Base Path .....	153
Add the ITMS Repository to Information Services for SAS Web Report Studio .....	153
Add the ITMS Repository to Information Services for the SAS Information Delivery Portal .....	153
Update the Repository Root Folder Properties .....	154
Update Your Web Application Server Policy File .....	155
Edit the <code>WebReportStudioProperties.xml</code> File .....	155
Restart the SAS Services Application and Your Web Application Server .....	156
Apply Mid-Tier Hot Fixes .....	157
<b>Extract and Deploy Functionality for z/OS .....</b>	<b>157</b>
Overview .....	157
Locating the Extract/Deploy Archive File .....	157
Transfer the Extract/Deploy Archive File to Windows .....	157
Extracting the Contents of the Extract/Deploy Archive File .....	158

Using the Extract and Deploy Functionality .....	158
Required Local Installation Modifications .....	158
Description of Run Order .....	158
Details of Run Steps .....	159
An End-to-End Example .....	160
<b>Appendix S — Installing SAS IT Service Level Management 2.1 .....</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>Appendix T — Post-Installation Setup for the Metabase Facility .....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Setting Up the System Repository Manager Files.....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Registering the SASHELP Repository in the Repository Manager.....</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Appendix U — Post-Installation Setup for SAS OLAP Server Software .....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>Open OLAP Client for SAS/MDDDB Server 3.0.....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>SAS OLAP Cube Studio.....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>SAS OLAP Server Monitor for SAS Management Console .....</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>Appendix V — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/SECURE Software.....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>SAS/SECURE Client for Windows .....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>SAS/SECURE Client for Java .....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>Client Components .....</b>	<b>169</b>
<b>Appendix W — Implementing SAS/SESSION Software .....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>Defining SAS/SESSION to the VTAM System .....</b>	<b>172</b>
Define the VTAM Applications.....	172
Define the VTAM Logon Mode.....	172
<b>Defining SAS/SESSION to APPC/MVS.....</b>	<b>173</b>
Security Considerations.....	174
<b>Defining SAS/SESSION to CICS .....</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>Activating the Interface .....</b>	<b>178</b>
SAS/SESSION on APPC/MVS.....	178
SAS/SESSION on CICS .....	179
Executing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation .....	179
<b>Appendix X — Implementing SAS/SHARE Software .....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Special Files for Use with SAS/SHARE Software .....</b>	<b>181</b>
Customizing the Started Task JCL Procedure for a Server.....	181
Configuration File for a Server .....	181
<b>Customizing the SAS/SHARE Autocall Macros .....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Selecting Communications Access Methods to Use .....</b>	<b>182</b>
<b>System Configuration for the Cross-Memory Access Method .....</b>	<b>183</b>
Installing the SASVXMS Load Module.....	183
Defining an Anchor Point .....	184
<b>System Configuration for TCP/IP .....</b>	<b>185</b>
Specify SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option TCPSEC=_SECURE_ for the server execution.....	185
<b>Client-Side Components .....</b>	<b>185</b>
SAS/SHARE Data Provider .....	185
SAS ODBC Driver .....	185
SAS/SHARE Driver for JDBC .....	185
SAS/SHARE SQL Library for C .....	186
<b>Special Consideration for the SECPROFILE System Option .....</b>	<b>186</b>

<b>Appendix Y — Implementing SAS/TOOLKIT Software .....</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>Appendix Z — Post-Installation Configuration of SAS Solution Adapters for SAP .....</b>	<b>189</b>
<b>Configuring SAS IT Management Adapter 2.7 for SAP .....</b>	<b>189</b>
<b>Appendix AA — Customizing SAS System Forms .....</b>	<b>191</b>
<b>Customizing the Printer Selection List.....</b>	<b>191</b>
<b>Appendix BB — Licensing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation .....</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>Processing Renewal of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation .....</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>SETINIT Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>194</b>
<b>OPTIONAL - Creating SASIRENW SETINIT Renewal Utility (Action R) .....</b>	<b>195</b>
Optional Processing Renewal of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation .....	196
<b>Emergency SETINITs .....</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>Appendix CC — Logging Directly on to the SAS System .....</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>Installing the Direct Logon Procedure .....</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>Example Logon Procedure .....</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>Using Direct Logon .....</b>	<b>199</b>
Logging onto the SAS Display Manager System.....	200
Logging onto a Windowing Application .....	200
<b>Restrictions .....</b>	<b>200</b>
Accounting Considerations.....	200



## Chapter 1 — Setting Up SAS 9.1.3 Foundation

**Note:** *z/OS is the successor to the OS/390 operating system. SAS 9.1.3 for z/OS runs on both z/OS and OS/390, and throughout this document any reference to z/OS should be interpreted to refer equally to OS/390, unless otherwise stated. Likewise, any reference to z/OS also applies to z/OS.e unless otherwise stated.*

This document describes the configuration instructions for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, which is made up of server-side Base SAS and a variety of server-side SAS products (the exact products vary by customer). Information about the configuration of mid-tier and client-side products is available from your SAS Software Navigator.

The server-side configuration instructions contained in this document are for the configuration of a generic SAS server. If you want to configure your server for more specific functions, such as a Workspace Server or Stored Process Server, please refer to “Appendix 2: Installing and Configuring the SAS Servers on z/OS” in the document entitled *SAS 9.1.3 Intelligence Platform: Installation Guide* at <http://support.sas.com/documentation/configuration/biig.pdf>.

Part 1 describes how to tailor your SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installation to suit your particular site configuration. The following topics are discussed in this section:

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Installing SAS Remote Help for z/OS (pg. 2)                        | (highly recommended) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Implementing SAS TSO Support (pg. 2)                               | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Architectural Changes Overview (pg. 4)                             | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files (pg. 9) | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Selecting a Bundled Configuration (pg. 15)                         | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Installing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation into the LPA/ELPA (pg. 16)         | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP (pg. 18)            | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Customizing Your SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure (pg. 32)        | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Customizing Your NEWS File (pg. 36)                                | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Installing the SAS 9.1.3 SVC Routine (pg.36)                       | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Installing the SAS SMF Exit (pg. 39)                               | (optional)           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Installing UNIX File System Components (pg. 41)                    | (optional)           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform (pg. 46)   | (recommended)        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Locating Hot Fixes (pg. 49)  | (recommended)        |

**Important:** *Each of the ‘recommended’ tasks should be reviewed by someone at your site who can determine whether or not the suggested steps are appropriate and if changes made would be consistent with your operating procedures and site-dependent options and parameters. At the beginning of many of these recommended tasks is a note indicating that ‘You should complete this task if*

*appropriate for your installation.’ Some of the tasks and actions might require knowledge of z/OS operating system principles.*

## Installing SAS Remote Help for z/OS

**Note:** This task is required if you are planning to run SAS Remote Help for z/OS.

SAS Remote Help for z/OS is an application which provides context-sensitive Help for z/OS within the SAS windowing environment. It is comprised of product documentation which is installed on a Java Application server and a program which is installed on each Windows client which displays documentation using a Web browser when help is requested from SAS.

SAS Remote Help for z/OS is available on the **SAS Installation Components for z/OS CD**.

## Implementing SAS TSO Support

**Note:** This task is required if you are planning to run SAS 9.1.3 Foundation under TSO.

If you plan to run SAS 9.1.3 Foundation under TSO, you must install the SASCP TSO command processor as outlined below, even if you previously installed it in an earlier release. If you do not install the SASCP TSO command processor, you can run SAS 9.1.3 Foundation only in batch mode. You must also use the CLIST supplied with this installation tape to run SAS 9.1.3 Foundation under TSO. **Do not try to use a SAS CLIST from a previous release due to new file allocations and other changes.**

SAS TSO support includes two different facilities. The SAS TSO command processor allows you to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation from a TSO session. The SAS TSO command support feature provides a SAS statement for executing TSO commands from a SAS session and allows SAS DATA step programs to execute TSO commands conditionally.

SAS 9.1.3 Foundation supports these features through installation-modifiable modules. These modules contain all of the TSO service routine dependent functions and make no reference to SAS service routines or data areas. These modules are:

- **SASCP** the TSO command processor for invoking SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.  
**Note:** *SASCP is backward compatible and replaces the modules from previous releases. You can continue to execute previous releases of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and SASCP with the Release 9.1.3 SASCP installed on your system.*
- **SASTSO** the TSO command executor for executing TSO commands.
- **SASCALL** the TSO CALL command processor used by SASTSO.
- **SASTSMAC** the macros necessary to assemble these modules.

These source modules are unloaded from the tape during installation into the `&prefix.BAMISC` library. The default load modules `SASCP`, `SASTSO`, and `SASCALL` are unloaded into your `&prefix.LIBRARY`. These modules work correctly under all levels of TSO.

Most sites will not need to modify the modules. If you do not need to customize the modules, proceed to STEP 3. However, should your site have special needs, STEPs 1 and 2 describe how to modify and reassemble these modules.

**STEP 1: Determine if the distributed TSO support modules require installation customization for your site. Perform customization if needed. (Optional)**

The Assembler source code for the `SASCP`, `SASTSO`, and `SASCALL` modules is available in your `&prefix.BAMISC` library for modification. Assembly requires that the `SYSLIB` concatenation contain the general use system macro library `SYSL.MACLIB`, the product-sensitive system macro library `SYSL.AMODGEN` or `SYSL.MODGEN`, and the `BAMISC` library. Examine the source code for

the TSO support modules for further details. Sample JCL for assembling and linking these modules is included with the comments of the modules.

If your site has modified the source code and re-linked the `SASCP` module, you can use the TSO `TEST` command to test `SASCP` directly from the SAS library by specifying the `CP` option of `TEST`. Create a test version of the SAS9 CLIST and insert the `TEST` command with the `CP` option immediately before the `SASCP` invocation at the end of the CLIST.

### **STEP 2: Modify system tables as needed. (Optional)**

This installation might also require that you modify certain system tables, such as the PCF and/or ISPF Command Authorization tables. These modifications might require the assistance of local systems or technical support personnel.

The TSO command executor, `SASTSO`, contains support for TSO command validation by both `PCF` and `ACF2`. The use of `ACF2` command validation must be explicitly enabled either by modifying and reassembling `SASTSO` (following the instructions given in the program header), or by using the z/OS service aid, `AMASPZAP`. Contact the Technical Support division at SAS if you have any questions concerning these procedures.

The functionality that will allow you to interface SAS 9.1.3 Foundation with IBM's ISPF is included in this release. For this reason, you should examine the ISPF Command Table, `ISPTCM`. For more information about this functionality, refer to Chapter 8, "SAS Interfaces to ISPF and REXX" in *SAS 9.1 Companion for z/OS*.

If the SAS command processor, `SASCP`, is defined within your installation's `ISPTCM`, the flag bit to allow a function pool to be created for the command must be on `x'40'`. If `SASCP` is not in your `ISPTCM`, then either the default flag value must include the preceding bit, or you should do one of the following:

- change the default flag value
- add `SASCP` to the table with the flag on

Note that the bit is `ON` in the default flag value in the sample `ISPTCM` that is distributed by IBM.

### **STEP 3: Copy the SASCP module to your TSO command load library.**

**Note:** This step is required if you are running under TSO.

Installation of SAS TSO support requires that the module `SASCP` be copied from the `&prefix.LIBRARY` to a load library that contains TSO commands. This can be a `STEPLIB` library defined in a `LOGON` procedure, a system link list library, or a link pack area library. (The `SASTSO` and `SASCALL` modules should remain in `&prefix.LIBRARY`.)

Use `job BASASCP` in the `CNTL` data set to copy `SASCP` to your TSO command load library. The `CMDDSN`, `CMDUNIT`, and `CMDVOL` JCL procedure parameters specify the user command load library into which you copy the `SASCP` module. Modify these values to specify your TSO command library. If you have customized the `SASCP` module and are storing it in a library other than `&prefix.LIBRARY`, you also need to specify its new location in the `//SASLIB DD` statement.

Check the JCL and run the `BASASCP` job.

## Architectural Changes Overview

This section introduces a new component known as the threaded kernel (TK).

### Threaded Kernel

The threaded kernel (TK) is an independent internal interface to low-level OS interfaces such as memory, events, task creation, etc. The TK interface is booted one time in an address space and its services are available to any task in that address space. SAS 9.1.3 Foundation makes use of TK services. Moreover, SAS is itself initiated as a TK-created task rather than being entered directly as the job step task or via ATTACH. SAS 9.1.3 Foundation runs, in effect, as a TK application. The introduction of TK into the SAS environment enables SAS to invoke OS services in a portable manner on multiple platforms, thereby enabling concurrent operations on multiple processors from multiple OS tasks.

Several procs will exploit this new interface in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and more will follow in future releases. As a reflection of these architectural changes, there are some changes in the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation initialization and termination details in the following areas:

- new entry points
- return codes
- TK options
- TK use of HFS
- TKMVSJNL DDNAME

### SAS Entry Points

Because SAS 9.1.3 Foundation runs as a TK application, the entry point names for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation have been changed to emphasize this fact. Since there were three primary entry points in SAS Version 8, there are three entry names in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Each of these new entry point names performs the same basic function.

1. Boot the TK interface in the address space.
2. Use TK task creation services to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation as a TK application.
3. Wait for the SAS task to complete and respond to the return/abend code.

The three new entry points differ only in the name of the SAS entry point that they use in invoking the SAS application task.

SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Entry Point Name	SAS Version 8 Entry Point Invoked	Comment
SAS	SASHOST	This is the unbundled entry point loaded from the STEPLIB.
SASB	SASXA1	This is the bundled entry point loaded from the STEPLIB.
SASLPA	SASXAL	This is the bundled entry point typically loaded from the LPA.

It is important to note that the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SASHOST/SASXA1/SASXAL entry point names will NOT execute correctly if they are invoked directly, outside of the TK environment created by the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation entry points. If you have JCL, CLISTS, or programs that invoke SAS directly, they will have to be changed to specify one of the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation entry point names in order to work correctly in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

## Return Codes

The SAS application task created by the TK via the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation entry points will return the same basic set of documented return codes and abend codes as it did in SAS Version 8. In SAS Version 8, these return/abend codes were returned directly to either the batch initiator task or to the SAS TSO command processor (SASCP). In SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, the codes are returned instead to the new SAS 9.1.3 Foundation entry point programs which created them (SAS/SASB/SASLPA). The return/abend codes are processed by the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation entry point programs as follows:

SAS Version 8 SAS Return Codes	SAS 9.1.3 Foundation code passed to OS or SASCP
System Abend Codes	USER 998 Abend / Reason Code = SAS Abend Code
User Abend Codes	SAS Abend Code
All Other SAS Return Codes	SAS Return Code (unmodified)

Note that processing of SAS Version 8 return codes in JCL or elsewhere will be unaffected by the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation return codes changes since normal return codes are passed through unmodified to the OS. Also, any system dumps taken in response to the system or user abend in the SAS application task will reflect the original abend, not the U998 abend which will not be accompanied by a dump. The U998 abend is intended to indicate that the TK application invoked ended abnormally as specified in the reason code and to ensure that job processing does not continue past the abending step.

Note that since SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is a dubbed UNIX Systems Services task, CPU excession abends are surfaced as SEC6 abends.

There are also some new TK abend codes for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation job steps. These codes will be seen only in special case circumstances as described below.

TK USER Abend Code	Meaning
U001 / Reason Code = nn	A task created by TK services abended with code nn AND the TKOPT_NOSTAEX or TKOPT_NOSTAEP TK option was active. These options request TK to abend the job step task, not just the task that suffered the abend (nn). These options will normally be active only as requested by SAS technical support for debugging purposes.
U997 / Reason Code = nn	A task created by TK services has encountered a condition from which it is considered unsafe to continue and still ensure system integrity. The condition is identified by the reason code (nn) which should be reported to SAS technical support. Note that the job containing the job step abending with U997 will report a S20D abend for the job as a whole.

## TK Options

Although the TK interface is portable across platforms, there are no portable TK options in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Such portable options might appear in future releases. There is, however, a mechanism in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to supply MVS platform-specific options to the TK interface. Note that TK options are independent and separate from SAS application options. They are not specified with the SAS application options on the JCL EXEC card or the SAS CLIST. TK options are provided instead by the standalone program TKMVSENV (see “Support for Environment Variables on z/OS” on page 8).

The TKMVSENV program maintains name/value pairs, similar to UNIX environment variables. These name/value pairs have a lifetime of the job step task. Thus, names defined in a batch job step will be undefined when the batch job step ends. Names defined during a TSO session, on the other hand, will be defined for the life of the TSO session (or until redefined or cleared by another invocation of the TKMVSENV program). The TK boot process makes TKMVSENV name/value pairs available to any application using TK services, including SAS.

The TKMVSENV program will obtain values from one of two sources. If the TKMVSENV program receives standard parms from the JCL EXEC statement or the TSO CALL command line, the program processes the command found in that parms image. If, however, the standard parms length is zero, the program will look for a data set allocated with the DDNAME of TKMVSENV. If the data set is found, the program processes each record in the data set as a command. If the TK boot process finds a TKMVSENV DDNAME allocated, then TK boot invokes the TKMVSENV program with a zero length parms specification. Since a TKMVSENV data set is included in the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation proc and CLIST, it is, in effect, a TK options file.

Note that the TKMVSENV shipped with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is empty. This is because almost all of the supported option names are required only in special debug circumstances, primarily when SAS technical support needs information for problem determination purposes. The data set is included in the SAS proc and CLIST so that it will be available when needed. Also, certain SAS 9.1.3 Foundation applications (such as the JAVA interface) might make use of the TKMVSENV data set to provide options specific to the JAVA interface. The following is a list of the TKMVSENV name/value pairs supported by the TK interface. Note that a number of them are used as Boolean style options and as such do not require a value after the = sign on the set command, although a value can be provided if desired.

TKMVSENV Command	Meaning
set TKOPT_NOSTAE=	This Boolean option tells the TK interface NOT to provide an MVS ESTAE around TK created tasks. The MVS ESTAE normally provided to protect these tasks enables TK applications to potentially recover from abends. This option is analogous to the SAS NOSTAE option.
set TKOPT_NOSTAEX=	This Boolean option is similar to TKOPT_NOSTAE. It further requests, however, that the entire job step task be ended in the event that a TK created task abends. (See U001 TK abend description above).
set TKOPT_NOSTAEP=	This Boolean option is similar to TKOPT_NOSTAEX. It further requests, however, that any recovery routines registered by the TK application be run. Only if all such recovery routines percolate the abend will the job step be abended.
set TKOPT_DUMPPROL=	This Boolean option provides tasks created by TK with additional debug information in the save areas provided by the function prolog and epilog code, easing the dump reading process. This option is analogous to the SAS DUMPPROL option.

TKMVSENV Command	Meaning
set TKOPT_MEMFILL=	This Boolean option fills memory provided by the TK memory management interface with special characters at memory get and memory free time. This option is intended to enhance the debug process and is analogous to the SAS \$VMMFILL option.
set TKOPT_SVCNO=nnn set TKOPT_SVCR15=nn	These options tell the TK interface how the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is installed at the user site. This is necessary because the TK interface might need to use some of the SVC services independent of the SAS application. These options should be specified the same as the SAS options of the same name.
set TKOPT_NOHFS=	<p>This Boolean option is provided for those sites that are unable to provide basic HFS file system resources to the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation system. See the section below on SAS 9.1.3 Foundation use of HFS for further details. If this option is specified, then the TK interface will take one of the following actions when an HFS file open is requested by the TK interface:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the HFS file open is an INPUT open request, the file is treated as an empty file. No HFS file opens are performed.</li> <li>• If HFS file open is an OUTPUT open request, a SYSOUT data set is allocated with a DDNAME of TKHFSnnn, where nnn is a unique number which is increased throughout the TK session. The first record in the SYSOUT data set will contain the path name of the HFS file actually requested. The remaining records will contain the data intended for the named HFS file.</li> </ul>
set TKOPT_LPANAME=xxxxxxx	This option specifies the name of the SAS application entry point invoked by the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SASLPA main entry point. If the installation placed the LPA resident module in the LPA with a name other than SASXAL, you will need to specify the same name for the TKOPT_LPANAME option value.
set TKOPT_MEMLEAVE=nnnnnnn	This option specifies the amount of memory in bytes that the TK memory subsystem will attempt to leave free in the address space for use by the system and other users.

## TK Use of HFS

One of the components of the TK interface is an IO interface known as TKIO. TKIO is intended to be a 'Simple IO' interface used primarily for tracing and debugging purposes. As such, the TKIO interface is simply not robust enough to handle the complexity of native MVS data set allocations and access methods. Consequently, the TKIO interface on MVS supports only the UNIX style HFS interface.

Given that many MVS installations are not set up to administer HFS file systems in a way that affords access to every potential SAS user, every effort has been made to ensure that no TKIO interface files are required in order to install SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and run existing SAS applications. Most of the usage is in the form of new LOG= parms on some SAS procedures. These options will expect the HFS path name to which log/debug information is to be written.

To ensure that HFS access will not be required in order to run existing applications with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, the following additions have been made to the TKIO interface in the MVS implementation:

- Wherever a TKIO path name is documented to be specified in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation syntax, you can substitute a name of eight characters or less. If the name specified is allocated to the current SAS session as a DDNAME, then the TKIO data will be read or written to the allocated MVS data set via the QSAM access method.
- If the TKOPT\_NOHFS TK option value is active for the session, then TKIO data will be redirected as described in the TK Options section above. This option might be required if the user does not have the opportunity to specify the path name. This option overrides any DDNAME specifications.

## TKMVSJNL DDNAME

TK includes the concepts of a global journal and a global IO. Sometimes, there will be error information placed in the buffer of the global journal and written to the global IO. The default IO will be opened first to the SASCLOG DDNAME, if it is present, and then to the TKMVSJNL DDNAME, if it is present. Otherwise, any information normally directed to the global IO will be lost. The SASCLOG DDNAME is part of the production SAS proc and CLIST so you should look there to find any messages written to the global journal. If you have trouble initializing some non-SAS programs like the V9 object spawner, you might receive error information by allocating a TKMVSJNL DDNAME. However, if the spawner has trouble initializing a spawned SAS process, you should also look to the SASCLOG of the spawned process for initialization error messages. This SASCLOG is most likely a JES SYSOUT file whose owner is the user ID of the spawned process. You can find these files using a JES Spool browser such as SDSF, IOF APPC, or EJES.

## Support for Environment Variables on z/OS

TKMVSENV is a stand-alone program that maintains a set of name/value string pairs or environment variables. The name/value pairs only exist during the MVS jobstep task in which the program is invoked.

TKMVSENV takes a standard JCL EXEC style parm list. General register 1 is expected to point to a single parm which is the address of a half word length followed by a parm string of that length. The parm string is composed of a single command. If the half word length field is zero, then the program looks for an allocated DDNAME of TKMVSENV. If the DDNAME is allocated, the file is read and processed one record at a time. Each record is expected to contain a single command. The file must be a sequential data set or a PDS member with a record format of fixed blocked and a logical record length up to 32760. The record length of the sample TKMVSENV file provided with the install is 560, which is the recommended minimum record length.

There are five valid commands. Note that the string values are case sensitive. If you invoke TKMVSENV from a TSO CALL command or from batch JCL and you need to ensure mixed case values are passed, you should specify the ASIS parm on the TSO CALL command image or set CAPS OFF in an ISPF edit session before submitting the batch JCL. Valid commands must begin in column 1 followed by one or more blanks. No blanks are allowed on either side of the '=' sign.

Valid commands are:

Command	Function
set name=value	Set a name/value pair
get name	Get a name value
clear name	Clear a name from the list
reset	Reset the list to zero members

Command	Function
disp	Display all name/values in the list (TSO only)

For the `get` command, R15 returns the address of a half word length of the value, followed by the value string. If the requested name was not found, R15 will contain 0 (zero).

There are two interfaces to the TKMVSENV utility from MVS TK:

1. TK NAMED/REPOSITORY calls with the special prefix of "OSENV." will be mapped to TKMVSENV calls as described in the TK documentation.
2. TKMVSENV will be invoked by MVS TK initialization processing with a zero-length parm. Thus you can allocate a TKMVSENV DDNAME to your TK invocation environment and define name/value pairs which can be queried by the TK application via the OSENV NAMED REPOSITORY interface.

## Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files

**Note:** You should complete this task if appropriate for your installation.

In the process of installing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation under z/OS, you establish default SAS system options for all SAS invocations at your site. You can set these global defaults in any of the following places:

- Default Options Table
- System configuration file
- Restricted Options Table

Two sample system configuration files are shipped with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. One has option settings set specifically for TSO (member TSOxx in the `CNTL` data set), while the other has settings for batch execution (member BATxx); in both file names, xx is the two-character media and data set code. These files are discussed in more detail later in this section.

Users can also specify options in any of the following locations:

- in a user configuration file, which is specified using the `CONFIG` operand in the CLIST and the `CONFIG` parameter in the cataloged procedure
- on the command line when invoking SAS 9.1.3 Foundation under TSO
- with the `OPTIONS` parameter in the cataloged procedure, if invoking it under batch
- from within a SAS session, either on an `OPTIONS` statement or from the `OPTIONS` window in the windowing environment

The following indicates the order in which SAS 9.1.3 Foundation processes options from the various sources:

1. Options in the Default Options Table (if assembled)
2. Options in a system configuration file (if one is used)
3. Options in a user configuration file (if one is specified)
4. Options supplied on the command line in the invocation of the CLIST (TSO) or using the `OPTIONS` parameter in the cataloged procedure (batch)
5. Options in the Restricted Options Table (if assembled)
6. Options specified on an `OPTIONS` statement or in the `OPTIONS` window.

Note that later specification of an option overrides an earlier specification. For example, options set in a user configuration file override options set in the system configuration file. Depending upon where you set them, you can streamline system startup or restrict use of options by users.

To streamline system startup for users under TSO, for example, you can add all option defaults needed for TSO at your site to the Default Options Table. Then, since users need not allocate a system configuration file at startup time, you can remove its allocation from the CLIST. Note that in this case, you still need a system configuration file for batch jobs to override the values tailored for TSO in the Default Options Table.

To restrict use of options by users, you can set them in the Restricted Options Table. Since this table is processed last after the Default Options Table, configuration files, and command line options, values set here override all earlier specifications.

#### **STEP 1: Determine default values for SAS system options at your site.**

SAS system options that can be used in any operating system environment in which SAS 9.1.3 Foundation resides are described as *portable* and discussed in *SAS 9.1 Language Reference: Dictionary, Volumes 1 and 2*. z/OS-specific system options are discussed in the *SAS 9.1 Companion for z/OS*. The section “Summary Table of SAS System Options” in the *Companion* contains a table that lists all options available in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation both portable and z/OS-specific.

The options are listed in alphabetical order for easy reference. This table shows the system default value for each option and includes a reference to the appropriate document for further details.

**Note:** *z/OS-specific options that warrant special attention at installation time are discussed in the following. These options include the SMF- and SVC-related options, and the superblocking options.*

#### **SMF and SVC Options**

The following options should be set in the Restricted Options Table with values that you choose at installation time. The settings of these options are unlikely to require change. Because of the measurements that these options govern, it is prudent to remove these option settings from general user access.

- **SMF|NOSMF** causes an SMF record to be written for every PROC or DATA step containing resource usage statistics for CPU time, memory, and EXCP count. NOSMF disables writing of utilization statistics by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. The default is NOSMF.

**Note:** *SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option STIMER must also be on for SMF records to be written.*

- **SMFEXIT=name** identifies the user SMF recording exit load module. This load module is loaded and given control before SMF records are written. It allows the user to modify the contents of the record to be written or to disallow the writing of the record (if SMF option is in effect). There is no default.

For information on installing the SMF exit, see “Installing the SAS SMF Exit” on page 38.

- **SMFTYPE=recnum** identifies the SMF record type to record and specifies the default user type for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to place in the SMF records it generates when the SMF option is on. The value must be greater than 127 for the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC to write the SMF record. The default is 128.
- **SVCOR15=value** specifies the value to be placed in Register 15 before invoking the SAS SVC. Used only if SVC0SVC=109. The default is 4.

For information about installing the SAS SVC, see “Installing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine” on page 36.

- `SVC0SVC=number` specifies the SVC number invoked for functions requiring the SAS SVC. The default is 109.

For information about installing the SAS SVC, see “Installing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine” on page 36.

## Superblocking Options

To decrease memory fragmentation, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation has the ability to obtain large blocks of memory from the operating system to satisfy multiple requests for smaller blocks of memory. This scheme, which is called *superblocking*, not only reduces fragmentation but also reduces the number of system `GETMAIN` calls that are issued. This facility is controlled by setting the superblocking options. When they are set to zero, no superblocking is performed.

The superblocking options warrant special attention at installation time because useful values can depend on the mode (batch or TSO) in which SAS 9.1.3 Foundation runs. The default values for these options are based on early and fairly limited experience in running SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. In most cases you should not need to override the default values.

To see the current values of these options and other options related to memory, as well as where they were set, submit

```
proc options group=memory value; run;
```

SAS 9.1.3 Foundation issues superblock overflow warning messages if secondary (OSA) superblock memory is needed. These messages can help you to tune these values for your site.

The following options can be used at SAS invocation or in a configuration file to specify the size of the superblocks. The values can be specified in bytes, kilobytes (K), or megabytes (M).

- `PSUPISA=value` specifies the size of the Initial Size Allocation (ISA) for the portable supervisor.
- `PSUPOSA=value` specifies the size of the Overflow Size Allocation (OSA) for the portable supervisor.
- `VMCTLISA=value` specifies the size of the ISA for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation memory management control blocks.
- `VMNSISA=value` specifies the initial size allocation of NOSIG pools.
- `VMNSOSA=value` specifies the overflow size allocation of NOSIG pools.
- `VMPAISA=value` specifies the size of the ISA for permanent memory above the 16 Mb line. Permanent memory is memory that is used past procedure or task termination, typically by the host and core supervisor.
- `VMPAOSA=value` specifies the size of the OSA for permanent memory above the 16 Mb line.
- `VMPBISA=value` specifies the size of the ISA for permanent memory below the 16 Mb line.
- `VMPBOSA=value` specifies the size of the OSA for permanent memory below the 16 Mb line.
- `VMTAISA=value` specifies the size of the ISA for temporary memory above the 16Mb line. Temporary memory is that memory which needs to be resident only while the task or procedure is active. This type of memory is highly transient so it is always cleaned up at the end of the task or procedure. Almost all PROC step memory, DATA step memory, and I/O buffers come from this class of memory.
- `VMTAOSA=value` specifies the size of the OSA for temporary memory above the 16Mb line.

- **VTBISA=value** specifies the size of the ISA for temporary memory below the 16Mb line.
- **VTBOSA=value** specifies the size of the OSA for temporary memory below the 16Mb line.

## WTO Options

There are three options that control the way system operator messages are issued if a SETINIT failure occurs. All of these options are invocation-only so that you can restrict them at your site by including them in the Restricted Options Table. If you work with a systems programmer at your site, you can set values for these options that cause SETINIT error messages to be trapped by operating system automation software.

To see the values of these options, specify the following:

```
proc options group=install; run;
```

Each of the WTO options corresponds to one of the keywords that can be supplied on the WTO system macro.

- **WTOSYSTEMDESC=n** Use this option to specify the message descriptor code. The value of this option is passed to the WTO macro with the DESC keyword.

See IBM documentation for the meaning of the various values (0 to 16) that can be supplied.

- **WTOSYSTEMMCSF=(list-of-keywords)** With this option you supply keywords that control the display of the message. Multiple values are permitted. If you specify more than one value, you must enclose them in parentheses; if you specify only one value, then the parentheses are optional.

Here are the keywords that you can supply:

BRDCST	Broadcast the message to all active consoles.
HRDCPY	Queue the message only for hard copy.
NOTIME	Do not append time to the message.
BUSYEXIT	Do not wait for WTO buffers.

This option corresponds to the MCSFLAG keyword on the WTO macro.

**WTOSYSTEMROUT=n** Use this option to specify the message routing code. The value of this option is passed to the WTO macro with the ROUTCDE keyword.

See IBM documentation for the meaning of the various values (0 to 16) that can be supplied.

## The BNDLSUFIX= Option

specifies a character that is to be appended to every bundle load module name before it is searched for or loaded. The character is appended to the name of every bundle load module (these modules have a prefix of SAB). If the name of the bundle is eight characters long already, the suffix character replaces the last character. The value for the

`BNDLSUFFIX=` option can be enclosed in quotes, but does not have to be. See “Selecting a Bundled Configuration” on page 15 for more information.

The `BNDLSUFFIX=` option is typically used only by system administrators, and not by the general user.

### The `SUBSYSID=` Option

tells the cross memory services communication facility to use the z/OS subsystem ID that was chosen in the installation process to anchor its resource descriptors. The default value is `SAS0`. This option is used in conjunction with SAS/SHARE software.

### The `OPRESTRICTIONS=` Option

sets the name of the Restricted Options Table load module, which sets initial options and prevents the user from overriding them. The syntax is `OPRESTRICTIONS=AAAAAAAA` where `AAAAAAAA` is the name of an z/OS load module that must be in LPA or the linklist. See “Step 5: Create a Restricted Options Table” for more information.

### The `DLINITDEFER` Option

suppresses synchronization of VTOC entry at library creation time. If your site uses SMS management classes which specify partial release = yes immediate, or if you utilize a system exit to release space when data sets are closed, you might want to consider specifying `DLINITDEFER` as a default option for your site.

### STEP 2: Determine where to set your option defaults.

Review the procedures for setting default option values in the next three steps. Decide which options should be set in the Default Options Table, the system configuration files, and the Restricted Options Table. Save these lists for use in later steps.

### STEP 3: Customize the supplied `DFLTOPTS` table.

Customizing `DFLTOPTS` (Default Options Table) is optional. If you decide to customize it, edit the `DFLTOPTS` assembler source by adding the options to the table that you would like to include and removing those you do not want. For example, you can put options that have the same value in all execution modes in the Default Options Table.

The source for the `DFLTOPTS` table resides in the `&prefix.BAMISC` library member `DFLTOPTS`. This source represents the `DFLTOPTS` table that is linked into the SAS load modules on your installation tape. Instructions for modifying the `DFLTOPTS` table are included in comments in the source code. The JCL to assemble and link it is in member `BAOPTS1` in the `CNTL` data set. Run the job to assemble the `DFLTOPTS` CSECT and link it into `SASHOST` individually, and into the bundles of which `SASHOST` is a part. Be sure that if you run a bundled configuration, you re-link the bundles that you use.

Since the `DFLTOPTS` table is linked with `SASHOST`, it does not have to be loaded to be read. If you can put all the default options that you need in the `DFLTOPTS` table, you do not have to use a system configuration file.

The `DFLTOPTS` table can contain as many option length/value pairs as needed. An option length/value pair consists of a half word length field, followed by a character string of the form `option`, `NOoption`, or `option=value`. The `OPT` macro in the assembler source calculates the length fields given the character strings. The table must be terminated by a pair with a length field of 0.

#### **STEP 4: Customize the system configuration files.**

Set up a system configuration file to establish installation-wide default values for commonly-used options. The default SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure installed from the tape always allocate a system configuration file and allow for specification of a user configuration file using the CONFIG operand and parameter.

There are config file examples created in the CNTL data set for use with the default CLISTs and cataloged procedures. All SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installations, whether domestic or foreign, are now encoded images.

Encoded images allow SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to be invoked using different character sets. For example, Wo is English and W3 is German, etc. Other examples of the encoding abbreviations can be found in the Languages, Encodings and Installation Codes table from the Installation Instructions.

The default invocation CLISTs and cataloged procedures, as discussed later, use the appropriate configuration files discussed below.

Customizing your system configuration files involves customizing the following default system configuration files supplied with the installation:

- TSOxx running under TSO
- DTSOxx running under TSO with double-byte support
- BATxx running in batch mode
- DBATxx running in batch mode with double-byte support

These default system configuration files are unloaded into the CNTL data set as samples for you to review. They contain some of the options for which you might want to establish installation-wide default values that would likely vary, depending on batch or interactive execution mode. However, not all of these options are required.

The CNTL data set, where the sample configuration files reside, is a blocked partitioned data set with fixed-length, 80-byte records. You can create a system or user configuration file as any sequential data set or member of a PDS, as long as the data set has fixed-length, 80-byte records.

The sample configuration files contain option settings separated into logical groups by comments. Records in a configuration file are either comment lines (indicated by an asterisk in column 1) or option lines. In the sample configuration files, options are listed one per line to make them easier to read and maintain. However, this is not required; more than one option can be included on a single line.

For options that require a value, the option must be specified as option=value with no blanks before or after the equal sign. Any SAS system option can be specified in the system configuration file. Those options include:

- options that must be specified only at invocation (sometimes referred to as invocation options). These options can be specified in a configuration file, on the CLIST command line, or in the batch OPTIONS parameter.
- options that can be specified any time (sometimes referred to as session options).

Once you have entered the options in the system configuration file, no further processing is necessary (unlike options specified in the Default Options Table or Restricted Options Table). However, if you move the configuration files from the installation CNTL data set, be sure to update your CLIST and cataloged procedure accordingly to reference the new data set names.

#### **STEP 5: Create a Restricted Options Table (optional).**

Options specified in the Restricted Options Table cannot be overridden by the user. For options in the Restricted Options Table to be processed, the restricted options module must come from a linklist library but does not have to be APF authorized.

The format of the Restricted Options Table is the same as that for the `DFLTOPTS` table, except that the option length/value pairs must be preceded by the header `***SASOPTRS***`. Like the Default Options Table, the Restricted Options Table is an assembler source module that must be assembled and linked.

The source for the sample Restricted Options Table is in the `&prefix.BAMISC` library member `SASOPTRS`. The JCL to assemble and link this table is in member `BAOPTS2` in the `CNTL` data set. The Restricted Options Table is optional. If you decide to install it, edit the `SASOPTRS` member containing the assembler source, adding the options to the table that you would like to include and removing those that you do not want to use. Run the `BAOPTS2` job to assemble the `SASOP910` module and link it into a linklist library.

Be sure that the `SYSLMOD DD` statement in the `BAOPTS2` job points to a linklist library since the `SASOP910` module must come from a linklist library in order to be processed.

**Note:** *The sample table provided with this installation restricts access to VSAM data sets. You should not run this sample “as is” unless you want to restrict the use of this feature.*

SAS checks for the restricted options module, `SASOP910`, but it is not required. Do not create the module unless you have customized the sample contents to meet your installation requirements.

In SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, you can apply different restricted options tables in different situations. This might be useful, for example, in a scenario that required multiple releases of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to run concurrently. Modify the JCL in the `BAOPTS2` member to assemble another restricted options module. Simply change the name on the `NAME` statement from `SASOP910` to a name of your choice. Then specify the following in the config file:

```
OPRESTRICTIONS=name_of_your_choice
```

`OPRESTRICTIONS` must be specified to override the default restricted options table identifier `SASOP910`. Should `OPRESTRICTIONS` be omitted, SAS continues to assume module `SASOP910` as the restricted options module table identifier.

#### STEP 6: Verify your default option settings.

After performing the various steps described in this section to set default option values for your site, you should run `PROC OPTIONS VALUE; RUN;` to verify that the desired defaults are in place. The z/OS-specific SMF and SVC options are not normally displayed by `PROC OPTIONS`. Specify `PROC OPTIONS VALUE GROUP=INSTALL; RUN;` to review these options.

## Selecting a Bundled Configuration

**Note:** *You should complete this task if appropriate for your installation.*

**Note:** *If the Double Byte Character Set (DBCS) is to be used in conjunction with a bundled configuration, then the modules that are to be renamed MUST come from the `&prefix.DBCS.LIBRARY`. This holds true for the non-LPA bundle configuration when using the `BNDLSUFFIX= system` option. The renamed modules are in the `&prefix.DBCS.LIBRARY`.*

SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS is distributed in two bundled configurations that are tailored for execution in the z/OS environment, and one unbundled configuration. The two bundled configurations differ in that one is tailored for execution with some modules installed in the Link Pack Area (LPA), while the other is tailored for execution with no modules installed in the LPA. Note that the code is identical across the three versions; the only difference is in the packaging.

The `ENTRY` parameter of the JCL cataloged procedure or TSO CLIST determines which configuration is used. The default entry name is `SAS`, which runs the unbundled configuration. If you want to run a bundled configuration, which is highly recommended, edit your installed SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to specify the appropriate entry name for your site as described in the following section.

### **z/OS non-LPA (ENTRY=SASB)**

The bundled components of the z/OS non-LPA configuration consist of the following modules located in your installed SAS LIBRARY data set: `SASXA1`, `SABXSPL`, `SABXINI`, `SABXTRM`, `SABDSC`, `SABDSX`, `SABZPLM`, `SABZPLC`, as well as others when other Institute Program Products (IPPs) are installed. `SABXINI` and `SABXTRM` are transient modules used during initialization and termination, respectively. `SABDSC` and `SABDSX` are the DATA step compilation and execution modules, respectively.

`SASB` is the entry name. To execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using this configuration, specify `ENTRY=SASB` in your `SASEDITP` member before you run the installation job(s), or directly in your SAS CLIST and PROC.

### **z/OS LPA (ENTRY=SASLPA)**

The bundled components of the z/OS LPA configuration consist of the modules listed in the following section.

All modules that are eligible to be loaded into the LPA will reside above the 16Mb line. `SASLPA` is the entry name. To execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using this configuration, you will need to follow the procedures outlined in the next section.

## **Installing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation into the LPA/ELPA**

**Note:** You should complete this task if appropriate for your installation.

You can install the bundled modules in the LPA/ELPA. If the bundled modules are not installed in the LPA/ELPA, they are loaded into the address space of each SAS 9.1.3 Foundation user. This can cause a significant increase in the working set size, placing a heavy burden on the paging subsystem. If you have many users of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, this might be an important consideration.

#### **STEP 1: Decide whether to install SAS 9.1.3 Foundation in the LPA/ELPA.**

Contact your systems programming staff to discuss the particular considerations involved at your site. You can install just the basic supervisor bundles (`SASXAL`, `SABXSPL`, `SABXDML`, `SABDS`), or the supervisor bundles and the other bundles listed below as optional. The module sizes are as follows:

#### **z/OS Configuration:**

<b>Bundled Modules for ELPA</b>	<b>Size</b>
<code>SASXAL</code>	2308K
<code>SABXSPL</code>	5015K (recommended)
<code>SABXDML</code>	944K (recommended; Display Manager)
<code>SABDS</code>	702K (recommended; DATA step)
<code>SABSCLL</code>	2715K (optional; used by SAS/ASSIST and SCL applications)

**Bundled Modules  
for ELPA**

SABDBGM	291K (optional; SCL debugger)
SABZPLH	71K (optional; printing routines)
SABXGPH	1502K (optional; part of SAS/GRAPH)

**Total for  
ELPA**            **13548K**

**STEP 2:**        **Install the modules into the LPA/ELPA using the standard procedure at your site.**

**STEP 3:**        **Ensure that modules in LPA/ELPA do not have the same names as modules in the installed SAS LIBRARY data set.**

***Note:** STEP 3 is necessary to prevent z/OS from loading LPA/ELPA modules into the user's address space when a JOBLIB or STEPLIB DD statement (batch), or a LOAD or SASLOAD CLIST parameter (TSO) references a SAS 9.1.3 Foundation LOAD LIBRARY.*

**You can do this in one of three ways:**

**Delete the bundled modules from the installed SAS LIBRARY data set.**

**Rename the bundled modules in the installed SAS LIBRARY data set.**

**Rename the bundled modules in the LPA/ELPA, leaving them in the installed SAS LIBRARY data set with their original names.**

This approach has two advantages. It simplifies the application of maintenance by allowing you to apply maintenance directly to the SAS LIBRARY data set. It also facilitates the concurrent running of different releases of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

To rename the bundles, do the following:

- Choose a single character (0-9, A-B, D-E, G, I-W, Y-Z, #, @, \$) as your suffix character. This will be the value of the BNDLSUF= SAS system option. Specify BNDLSUF=*character* in default CONFIG files, default options tables, or restricted options tables.
- Rename the bundles, adding the suffix character to the old name to get the new name. For example, if you choose the character 0 as your suffix character, rename the modules listed as follows:

Original Name	New Name
SASXAL	SASXAL0
SABXSPL	SABXSPL0
SABXDML	SABXDML0
SABDS	SABDS0
SABSCLL	SABSCLL0
SABDBGM	SABDBGM0
SABZPLH	SABZPLH0
SABXGPH	SABXGPH0

**Note:** Your list of modules might not include all those in this example. Your list will depend on the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation products that you have licensed.

If you change the name of SASXAL, you must specify the new name in the TKMVSENV member located in the &prefix.TKMVSENV data set. For example, using the example above, add the following line to the TKMVSENV member:

```
set TKOPT_LPANAME=SASXAL0
```

**Step 4: Make sure the ENTRY parameter of the JCL cataloged procedure and TSO CLIST defaults to the appropriate name, SASLPA.**

If you plan to make further CLIST or procedure customizations, edit the SASEDITP member of the CNTL data set to specify your name for the ENTRY parameter.

**Step 5: If you have renamed the modules in the LPA/ELPA, use the BNDLSUF= SAS system option to tell SAS which set of bundled modules to use:**

**BNDLSUF=character**



If you use BNDLSUF= for any of the bundled modules, you must rename them all, including those bundles which are added later. A mixture of bundles which have been renamed and those that have not will cause the system to fail. This applies to bundles in both the LPA/ELPA and the SAS LIBRARY data set.

## System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP

### Recommended Procedures

The steps in this section are required if you are to take full advantage of base SAS Software's functionality. TCP/IP must be configured if you will be using certain features of base SAS software, such as EMAIL, URL, Socket and FTP ACCESS methods. You will not be able to use these features if you have not properly configured SAS for use with TCP/IP. If you choose not to complete the steps in this section, you should notify SAS users that this functionality is not available.

In addition, many SAS solutions and products might require the steps in this section to be completed. A partial list of these products would include SAS/SHARE, SAS/CONNECT, SAS/IntrNet Software, SAS IT Resource Management, SAS Integration Technologies and SAS OLAP Server Software. Please refer to product-specific appendices for further details.

### Overview and Software Requirements

#### Overview

TCP/IP is a set of layered protocols that enable cooperating computers to perform tasks and to share resources across a network. TCP/IP is comprised of TCP and IP.

TCP is a set of routines that applications use to communicate with another computer over a network. All applications do not use TCP. However, all network applications require the services that are provided in IP. IP is a set of routines that TCP calls, but the IP routines are also available to applications that do not use TCP. SAS uses both TCP and IP, and requires that certain types of information be made available to the operating environment.

Although you might refer to a computer by using its host name, TCP/IP applications refer to computers by using their IP addresses. To facilitate the use of host names in a network, the Domain Name System translates host names to IP addresses. This Domain Name System provides host-to-IP address mapping through network server hosts, which are called domain name servers. The Domain Name System also provides other information about server hosts and networks, such as the TCP/IP services that are available to the server host and the location of the domain name servers in the network.

**Note:** *An additional reference concerning SAS and TCP/IP in the z/OS environment can be found in the “Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT and SAS/SHARE.”*

### **Software Requirements**

- SAS Transient Library 7.50 (which is shipped with this version of SAS)
- One of the following TCP/IP packages:
- IBM OS/390 V2R10 IP Communications Server or later
- Computer Associates Unicenter TCPaccess 6.0 or later
- UNIX System Services file system
- A default OpenEdition security segment (or an individual OE segment for each user ID) is required and must be defined in the security software (RACF, ACF2, Top Secret)

### **Configuring SAS to Communicate with TCP/IP**

To configure SAS to communicate with TCP/IP (either IBM TCP/IP or CA-TCPaccess) or to verify your configuration, the following steps must be completed, and the results made available to SAS:

1. CA-Unicenter TCPaccess Notes (see below)
2. Make the SAS Transient Library Available (see on page 20)
3. Verify TCP/IP Stack Definition (on page 22)
4. Verify System and USS process limits (on page 22)
5. Verify TCP/IP Host Name Configuration (on page 23)
6. Verify TCP/IP Stack Configuration files affecting SAS (on page 24)
7. Verify Host Name Resolution (on page 28)
8. Customizing UNIX System Services (USS) – OMVS/Open Edition (on page 29)
9. Setting up a Customized SAS Configuration (on page 30)
10. Diagnosing Configuration Problems (on page 32)

#### **1. CA UNICENTER: TCPaccess Notes**

TCPaccess (formerly Interlink SNS TCPaccess) allows SAS to connect with a TCPaccess TCP/IP stack. SAS 9 interface to TCPaccess requires that TCPaccess be configured to use OE (Integrated) sockets. For this method, the configuration for accessing TCPaccess is much the same as the configuration for IBM Communication Server. When using OE sockets, TCPaccess uses the IBM LE/370 Run Time Library. Although the CA Unicenter TCPaccess Communication Server has its own name resolver (DNR) for non-OE sockets, neither SAS nor SAS/C can use it. Thus the SAS Name Resolver must be used for SAS 9.

For details on configuring OE sockets for TCPaccess, refer to the CA documentation *Unicenter TCPaccess Communications Server: Customization Guide 6.0* and the *Unicenter TCPaccess C/Socket Programmer's Reference*. In SAS 9, the SAS option ICSRSLV= is no longer needed to communicate with TCPACCESS.

## 2. Make the SAS Transient Library Available

The SAS Transient Library contains various modules and routines that SAS uses during execution. The SAS Transient Library is also required for communication between SAS and the TCP/IP Communications Servers. The library is automatically unloaded from the installation media during the SAS install process into a data set that is named `&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB`. The prefix is a high-level qualifier of SAS installation libraries. `&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB` can be copied to a link-list library or to the LPA.

**Make the SAS Transient Library available to SAS in one of the following ways:**

1. `CTransLoc=` option specified in the CONFIG file. This option is generated in the CONFIG members of the CNTL data set during installation. For example,  

```
CTransLoc=&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB
```

or

```
CTransLoc=CTrans (if set to a DDname, then DDname must be allocated)
```
2. Copy (or define) `&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB` to a link-list library or to the LPA
3. Add `&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB` to the STEPLIB or TASKLIB concatenation in the SAS cataloged procedure and the SAS CLIST, respectively.
4. Add an allocation for the `CTrans` DD to the `&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB` data set in the SAS cataloged procedure and SAS CLIST. An example of these allocations would be as follows:

For SAS JCL procedure:

```
//CTrans DD DISP=SHR, DSN=&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB
```

For SAS CLIST:

```
ALLOC F(CTrans) DA('&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB') SHR
```

**Note:** *There might be previous versions of the SAS Transient Library installed on your system (often in a link list library). The 7.50C version of the SAS Transient Library that ships with SAS 9.1.3 is required. To verify the value of `CTransLoc=` option, execute the SAS code “PROC OPTIONS OPTION=CTransLoc; RUN;”*

*In SAS 8.1 and 8.2, the `CTransLoc=` option takes precedent over any other method of allocating the SAS Transient Library. In SAS 9.1.3, the `CTrans` DD allocation takes precedent over any other method.*

## Processing of CTRANSLOC Option in SAS

The following table describes the processing of the SAS CTRANSLOC System Option:

Value of CTRANSLOC	When CTRANS already allocated...	When CTRANS not allocated...
CTrans	Issue NOTE to job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>NOTE: C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM _____</b>	Issue NOTE to job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>NOTE: C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM LIBRARIES IN THE NORMAL SEARCH PATH.</b>
DDname or Data set name	<p>Get name of data set allocated to CTRANS.</p> <p>If DDname specified as value of CTRANSLOC, get name of data set associated with the DDname. If no data set is associated with the DDname, issue warning to the job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>WARNING: NO DATA SET ALLOCATED TO DDNAME _____ . C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM LIBRARIES IN THE NORMAL SEARCH PATH.</b></p> <p>Compare names of data sets. If they match, issue note to job log: <b>NOTE: C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM _____</b>.</p> <p>If they don't match, produce a warning: <b>WARNING: THE VALUE SPECIFIED IN CTRANSLOC IS IGNORED BECAUSE CTRANS IS ALREADY ALLOCATED TO DATA SET _____</b>.</p>	<p>If DDname specified as value of CTRANSLOC, get name of data set associated with the DDname. If no data set is associated with the DDname, issue warning to the job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>WARNING: NO DATA SET ALLOCATED TO DDNAME _____ . C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM LIBRARIES IN THE NORMAL SEARCH PATH.</b></p> <p>Allocate data set to CTRANS. If there is an error in allocation, Issue WARNING to job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>WARNING: DATA SET _____ COULD NOT BE ALLOCATED TO CTRANS. C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM LIBRARIES IN THE NORMAL SEARCH PATH.</b></p> <p>If the data set is allocated successfully, issue note to job log: <b>NOTE: C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM _____</b>.</p>
null	Issue NOTE to job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>NOTE: C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM LIBRARIES IN THE NORMAL SEARCH PATH.</b>	Issue NOTE to job log (not to SAS log since that is not available when this message is generated): <b>NOTE: C TRANSIENTS WILL BE LOADED FROM LIBRARIES IN THE NORMAL SEARCH PATH.</b>

### 3. Verify TCP/IP Stack definition

#### TCP/IP Communication Stack Definition

TCP/IP stack is a term for the set of protocols that comprise TCP/IP. A TCP/IP Communication stack that runs under the OS/390 and z/OS operating environments is implemented as a UNIX System Services (USS) physical file system (PFS). An operating environment can run using one or more TCP/IP stacks. The stack definitions are located in `SYS1.PARMLIB(BPXPRMnn)`.

The IBM INET physical file system type supports a single TCP/IP stack. The IBM CINET physical file system type supports multiple stacks.

**Note:** *If you will configure only one TCP/IP stack and you have access to both INET and CINET, it is advisable to configure the stack under INET because of its efficiency over CINET. For examples of various Stack definitions, refer to Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT and SAS/SHARE Software. For complete details, see the IBM documentation z/OS UNIX System Services Planning.*

The entry name for CA's TCPaccess 6.0 stack must be T010PFSA.

### 4. Verify System and USS Process Limits

The following IBM system values are set in the `SYS1.PARMLIB` member `BPXPRMnn` and affect the number of TCP/IP sockets that SAS can use.

**MAXSOCKETS** system limit; specifies the maximum number of sockets that can be obtained for a given file system type. IBM recommends that this value be set to 10000.

**MAXFILEPROC** process limit; specifies the maximum number of file descriptors that a single process can have open concurrently, such as all open files, directories, sockets, and pipes. This value is usually set to 256. However, for heavy server use, it is advisable to set this number to 64000.

Please consult your IBM manual, *z/OS UNIX System Service Planning*, to get the most current IBM recommendations for your z/OS version.

For z/OS versions 1.7 and above, you may consult the *IBM Health Checker for z/OS User's Guide*. This will help you identify potential problems with your settings before they impact your availability.

You can check these IBM system values by using the following commands:

**D OMVS,OPTIONS** is a z/OS command that will allow you to check the value of MAXFILEPROC.

**D OMVS,PFS** is a z/OS command that will allow you to check the value of MAXSOCKETS.

**Note:** *You can use the RACF ALTUSER or ADDUSER system commands to set MAXFILEPROC on a per-user basis. For complete details about MAXSOCKETS and MAXFILEPROC, see the IBM documentation entitled z/OS UNIX System Services Planning.*

## 5. Verify TCP/IP Host name Configuration

### IP Addresses

In order for a SAS process to connect to a host machine via TCP/IP, the process must know the IP address of the host machine. To obtain the IP address, the SAS process calls the following functions:

gethostname()                retrieves a string that contains its host name.

gethostbyname()            resolves the host name string to its IP address.

Because each host name is associated with a TCP/IP stack, it is critical that the host name be configured correctly for each TCP/IP stack.

### TCP/IP Host Name Configuration for Communications Servers

Configuration for TCP/IP host names varies according to the communications server that is used.

#### IBM Communications Servers

The configuration process searches the TCPIP.DATA file, which contains configuration statements, to locate its host name.

1. If the IBM stack reads a TCPIP.DATA HOSTNAME configuration statement, it saves this value as the stack's host name.
2. If a TCPIP.DATA HOSTNAME configuration statement is not read, the TCP/IP stack searches for the Virtual Machine Communication Facility (VMCF) node name from VMCF and uses its node name as the stack's host name. VMCF should be running before any TCP/IP stacks are started. If VMCF is not running when the TCP/IP stack is started, the TCP/IP stack's host name is determined by the release of the operating system environment.
  - Under OS/390 2.10 and earlier releases, the stack's host name is set to a NULL string.
  - Under z/OS 1.2 and later releases, the stack's host name is set to the CVTSNAME, which is the SYSNAME=value in IEASYSnn that was used when the system was started.

The Virtual Machine Communication Facility (VMCF) node name is used as the *system\_name* prefix when processing IBM TCPIP.DATA configuration statements. The VMCF can be configured in two ways:

as a restartable subsystem

If you have configured VMCF as a restartable subsystem, the node name is obtained from the value of the P= parameter in the EZAZSSI started procedure.

as a non-restartable subsystem

If you configured VMCF as a non-restartable subsystem, the node name is specified in the IEFSSNnn member of PARMLIB.

**Note:** IBM recommends that the MVS system name be used for the VMCF node name specification. For details about configuring VMCF, refer to the IBM document z/OS Communication Server: IP Configuration Guide.

## CA TCPaccess Communications Server

When a CA TCPaccess TCP/IP stack starts, the configuration process searches the TCPCFGnn PARM member, which contains configuration statements, to locate its host name. The host name is defined by the SYSUNIQ SYSNAME(host\_name), which is stored in the TCPCPGnn TCPIP.PARM member. For details about this file, see CA TCPCPGnn TCPIP.PARM Member.

If a configuration statement is not located in the TCPCFGnn PARM member, the host name is obtained from the SYS1.PARMLIB(IEASYnn) SYSNAME=system\_name.

**Note:** Support for SYSUNIQ for releases prior to TCPaccess 6.0 requires the following: maintenance level SP0208 with fix TP09208.

For complete details, see the CA documentation *Unicenter TCPaccess Communications Server: Customization Guide 6.0*.

## 6. Verify TCP/IP Configuration Files affecting SAS

### TCPIP.DATA File

The TCPIP.DATA file contains statements that are used to configure both the IBM TCP/IP stack and Communication Server Applications and the CA Unicenter TCPaccess stack and Communication Server Applications.

### Locating the TCPIP.DATA File

SAS by default uses its own Resolver (the SAS Resolver) for both Native MVS and USS sockets. Therefore, it is crucial that all Resolvers get the same information. The best way to accomplish this is to make sure that all Resolvers are reading the same TCPIP.DATA file. See the table below for a comparison of Resolvers.

Comparison of the Four Resolvers' TCPIP.DATA Search Orders Under OS/390 and z/OS				
Order	IBM's MVS Resolver (a)	IBM's LE Resolver (a)	SAS's Resolver (b)	z/OS Resolver (c)
1	SYSTCPD DD-name	LE environmental variable, RESOLVER_CONFIG	SAS/C Environment var. TCPIP_DATA	GLOBALTCPIPDATA
2	jobname.TCPIP.DATA	/etc/resolv.conf	SYSTCPD DD-name	RESOLV_CONF
3	SYS1.TCPPARMS	SYSTCPD DD-name	userid.TCPIP.DATA(TCPDATA)	/etc/resolv.conf
4	TCPIP.TCPIP.DATA	userid.TCPIP.DATA	SYS1.TCPPARMS(TCPDATA)	SYSTCPD DD-name
5		SYS1.TCPPARMS(TCPDATA)	tcip_prefix.TCPIP.DATA where "tcip_prefix" is the value of the SAS environmental variable TCPIP_PREFIX or system option TCPIPPRF=	userid.TCPIP.DATA
6		TCPIP.TCPIP.DATA	TCPIP.TCPIP.DATA	SYS1.TCPPARMS(TCPDATA)

### Comparison of the Four Resolvers' TCPIP.DATA Search Orders Under OS/390 and z/OS

Order	IBM's MVS Resolver (a)	IBM's LE Resolver (a)	SAS's Resolver (b)	z/OS Resolver (c)
7			TCPIP.DATA	DEFAULTTCPDATA
8				TCPIP.TCPIP.DATA

**Notes:** (a) From OS/390 IBM Communications Server - IP Configuration Guide.

(b) From SAS/C Library Reference, Volume 2.

(c) From z/OS IBM Communications Server – IP Configuration Guide.

When using the SAS Resolver, if the TCPIP.DATA file is not found using the above SAS Resolver search order, then the recommended method is to add an allocation for SYSTCPD (#2 above) to the SAS CLIST and SAS Catalog Procedure, as well as all other methods of invoking SAS.

The HOMETEST command is an IBM utility for verifying the actual data set name that IBM's MVS Resolver finds for the TCPIP.DATA. However, this **cannot** be the same data set found by IBM's LE Resolver or the SAS Resolver.

#### TCPDATA Parameters

The following is a brief description of the parameters within the TCPIP.DATA file that affect SAS directly:

TCPIPJOBNAME

The name of the member in the cataloged procedure library that is used to start the TCPIP address space. This is how SAS locates the TCP/IP Started task. For example, if the Started Task name is TCPIP34, the statement would read:

```
TCPIPJOBNAME TCPIP34 ;Name of the TCPIP Started Task
```

The default is TCPIP.

#### HOSTNAME

The HOSTNAME statement is used to specify the TCP host name of the z/OS server. The fully qualified domain name for the host is formed by concatenating this host name with the domain origin (specified by the DOMAINORIGIN configuration statement). SAS will use this along with the DOMAINORIGIN to form the fully qualified domain name used in host name resolution.

#### DATASETPREFIX

The DATASETPREFIX statement is used to set the high-level qualifier for the dynamic allocation of data sets in TCP/IP. This allows SAS to locate other TCP/IP files. The default is TCPIP.

#### DOMAINORIGIN

The DOMAINORIGIN statement is used to specify the domain origin that is appended to the host name to form the fully qualified domain name for a host. This is how SAS completes host name resolution.

#### NSINTERADDR

The NSINTERADDR statement specifies the Internet address of the name server. This line can be repeated as many times as needed to specify IP addresses of alternative name servers. Connections to the name servers are attempted in the order they appear in the hlq.TCPIP.DATA file. If no NSINTERADDR are coded in the hlq.TCPIP.DATA file, the resolver looks for all domain names in the site table, and does not attempt to use a name server. SAS will use this value to

perform host name resolution to an IP address. If the value of the name server Internet address is not present, then SAS will look for other TCP/IP files to perform host name resolution.

#### **NSPORTADDR**

The `NSPORTADDR` statement is used to specify the name server port number. The default is Port 53. SAS will use this port to locate the domain named server.

#### **Limitations of the SAS Name Resolver**

The SAS Name Resolver does not support the IBM Name Resolver setup directives or the new resolver configuration directives. The SAS Name Resolver ignores any directive that it does not recognize.

In order for the SAS Name Resolver to correctly use a `TCPIP.DATA` file that was written for the IBM Name Resolver, the `DOMAINORIGIN` directive must be included in the `TCPIP.DATA` file. If one or more `SEARCH` directives are used in the file, the `DOMAINORIGIN` directive must precede them. The SAS Name Resolver reads the `DOMAINORIGIN` directive but ignores `SEARCH` directives because the SAS Name Resolver does not recognize them. However, the IBM Name Resolver reads the `DOMAINORIGIN` directive, but any `SEARCH` directives that follow will override the behavior of the `DOMAINORIGIN` directive.

If your site uses any of the new features of the IBM z/OS Name Resolver, it is highly recommended that the SAS Transient Library be configured to use the IBM z/OS Name Resolver instead of the SAS Name Resolver.

With z/OS 1.2 and later, the new IBM z/OS Resolver was introduced. To exploit this new Resolver see SAS Note SN-010082 at the following Web site:

<http://support.sas.com/techsup/unotes/SN/010/010082.html>

**Note:** *For complete details about the IBM `TCPIP.DATA` statements, see the IBM documentation z/OS Communication Server: IP Configuration Reference. If the `TCPIP.DATA` file is an MVS data set, it should be a fixed block (`RECFM=FB`) with a logical record length of 80 (`LRECL=80`). Also use a semi-colon (;) to designate any comments. This is the location for most of the TCP/IP information that SAS will use. The `TCPIP.DATA` file set can also be stored as an HFS file.*

#### **TCP/IP SERVICES File**

Some SAS products (products which utilize a server) require an entry in the `TCP/IP SERVICES` file. Please see individual product requirements to verify the need for an entry into the `TCP/IP SERVICES` file. The `ETC.SERVICES` data set can be either an HFS file or a MVS data set. If allocated as a MVS data set, it should be a physical sequential (`DSORG=PS`), Fixed Block (`RECFM=FB`), `LRECL=80` data set without sequence numbers.

Entries in the `ETC.SERVICES` file will follow the sample form below:

```
#   this is a comment in the ETC.SERVICES file
#
telnet      23/telnet
ftp         21/tcp
sassrv1     5010/tcp   # SAS/SHARE Server number 1
sassrv2     5011/tcp   # SAS/SHARE Server number 2
appsrv1     5224/tcp   # SAS/IntrNet Application Server number 1
appsrv2     5225/tcp   # SAS/IntrNet Application Server number 2
```

```
spawner1 5227/tcp # z/OS SAS/Connect Spawner
```

### SAS Transient Search Order for Finding the SERVICES File

1. ETC\_SERVICES environment variable
2. //hfs:/etc/services (only integrated sockets)
3. tso-prefix.ETC.SERVICES
4. ETC.SERVICES
5. tcpip-prefix.ETC.SERVICES

*Note: Some environments do not implement a TCP/IP SERVICES File, but instead define the port in the TCP/IP PROFILE data set. **Although a port can be defined in both the TCP/IP SERVICES data set and the TCP/IP PROFILE data set, they can not be used interchangeably.** The SERVICES file relates a service name to a port number. The PROFILE data set reserves a port number to a particular task name.*

### TCP/IP PROFILE Data Set

The TCP/IP PROFILE data set is used only for the configuration of the IBM TCP/IP stack. It contains statements that provide TCP/IP initialization parameters and specifications for network interfaces and routing. Neither SAS nor the SAS Transient Library access this file directly.

The search order used by the TCP/IP stack to find the PROFILE data set is as follows:

1. //PROFILE DD statements in the TCP/IP startup procedure
2. job\_name.node\_name.TCPIP
3. datasetprefix.node\_name.TCPIP
4. job\_name.PROFILE.TCPIP
5. datasetprefix.PROFILE.TCPIP

### Profile Parameters Affecting SAS indirectly

Datasetprefix:	defines HLQ for dynamic allocation of data sets.
PORT:	reserves ports for server tasks. The jobnames/procnames specified are only allowed access to the port specified on this statement.
RESTRICT:	defines a list of user IDs that are prohibited from using TCP/IP.
RESTRICTLOWPORTS:	restrict use of ports 1 to 1023 to specific jobnames/procnames in the port or portrange statement.
PORTRANGE:	same as PORT parameter but for a range of ports.

### CA Unicenter TCPaccess Configuration Files affecting SAS

#### TCPCPGnn TCPIP.PARM Member

The CA Unicenter TCPaccess Communications Server uses a TCPCFGnn TCPIP.PARM member to configure its TCP/IP stack at start-up.

The following TCPCFGnn statements are used to configure the TCP/IP stack and to restrict the ports that SAS servers can use:

SYSUNIQ SYSNAME (*host\_name*) defines the host name that is associated with the TCP/IP stack

TCP PORTASGN

restricts the range of port numbers

For details about the TCPaccess TCPCFGnn statements, see the CA documentation *Unicenter TCPaccess Communications Server: Customization Guide 6.0*.

## 7. Verify Host Name Resolution

A name resolver is a set of routines that act as a client on behalf of an application to read a local host file or to access one or more domain name servers (DNS) for name-to-address or address-to-name resolution. Name resolution occurs by calling the name resolver functions **gethostbyname()** and **gethostbyaddr()**. A name resolver must be configured for each host.

IP address-to-host name mapping is performed by the Domain Name System if the NSINTERADDR statement(s) in the TCPIP.DATA file point to the IP address(es) of the Name Servers.

The following keyword/value combinations are involved in resolving host names in the TCP/IP Data file:

NSINTERADDR	value; Required
NSPORTADDR	value; Optional, will use default values
RESOLVEIA	value; Optional, will use default values
RESOLVETIMEOUT	value; Optional, will use default values
RESOLVERUDPRETRIES	value; Optional, will use default values

NSINTERADDR is the only one that needs to be verified. The defaults for the others are sufficient for SAS to function properly.

**Note:** *If Name Servers are not being used for Host Name Resolution, the NSINTERADDR statement(s) would be commented out.*

### Using a Host Table

If a DNS server is not available for Host Name Resolution, then a Host Table can be used. However, the SAS Transient library cannot use the IBM TCP/IP file 'tcprefix.HOSTS.LOCAL' or the 'tcprefix.HOST.SITEINFO' due to the format of the data. See the table below for the default SAS search order of finding a HOSTS table:

1. ETC\_HOSTS environment variable
2. //hfs:/etc/hosts OS/390 (only integrated sockets)
3. tso-prefix.ETC.HOSTS under TSO
4. ETC.HOSTS
5. tcpip-prefix.ETC.HOSTS, if TCPIP\_PREFIX is not blank.

To use a Host table not found with the default search order, SAS Transient environment variables must be used. For details on setting up environment variables, see the section "Using Environment Variables and SAS Options" under "9. Setting up a Customized SAS Configuration" on page 30.

**Note:** *For SAS 9, the CA Unicenter TCPaccess Communications Server must be configured to run using OE (Integrated) Sockets, thus requiring the use of DNS servers and no need for a host table.*

## 8. Customizing UNIX System Services (USS) - Open Edition

**Note:** *As previously stated in the System Requirements, a default OpenEdition security segment is required, or an individual OE segment, for each user ID. This is defined through the security software (RACF, ACF2, Top Secret).*

Certain SAS applications (such as the Application Broker and Load Manager for SAS/IntrNet that execute under UNIX System Services) must be customized for the local environment. The customization steps require defining environment variables. These variables direct how SAS initializes and uses files under the USS. The following information is required by SAS:

1. Defining the location of the SAS Transient Library
2. Defining the name of the TCP/IP configuration data set
3. Defining Host Tables if a Domain Name server is not available

## 1. Defining the Location of the SAS Transient Library

The SAS Transient Library contains various modules and routines that are used by SAS during execution. These libraries are unloaded from the installation media during the SAS installation process. Specify the library using the following environment variable command:

```
ddn_CTRANS=&prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB
```

Where &prefix = High-Level-Qualifier of SAS installation libraries.

## 2. Defining the name of the TCP/IP Configuration Data Set

Under UNIX System Services to find the TCP/IP DATA file using environment variables, use the following environment variable command:

```
TCPIP_DATA=//dsn:SYS1.TCPPARMS (TCPDATA)
```

Or, change the value following //dsn: to point to the TCP/IP configuration data set at your site.

## 3. Defining Host Tables if a Domain Name server is not available

If the site does not use a domain name server, then SAS under UNIX System Services must be customized to perform hostname table lookup. Specify the name of the host table lookup file using the following environment variable:

```
ETC_HOSTS=//dsn:sys2.ETC.HOSTS
```

where *sys2.ETC.HOSTS* is the *ETC.HOSTS* file installed under z/OS. The format of this file is described in the section “9. Setting up a Customized SAS Configuration” page 30. If your *ETC.HOSTS* file is located within the HFS under UNIX System Services as */etc/hosts*, the environment variable statement would look like this:

```
ETC_HOSTS=//hfs:/etc/hosts
```

Ensure the *ETC\_HOSTS* environment variable points to the correct path and file name.

**Note:** The **export** command might be needed depending on where the environment variable is defined. For example if defining an environment variable in a shell script, then you would need the **export** command.

```
export ETC_HOSTS=//dsn:SYS2.ETC.HOSTS
```

For additional information on setting environment variables in UNIX System Services, reference SAS Note SN-010470 at the following Web site:

<http://support.sas.com/techsup/unotes/SN/010/010470.html>

## 9. Setting up a Customized SAS Configuration

### Using Environment Variables and SAS Options

SAS/C environment variables and SAS system options are needed only if the default TCP/IP system configuration can not be used, or if the configuration files are not formatted as required by the SAS Transient Library.

SAS uses the following SAS/C environment variables (and SAS system option equivalents) to alter default processing for TCP/IP initialization:

❑ `TCPIP_MACH=name` (environment variable)

❑ `TCPIPMCH=name` (SAS system option)

This environment variable or option is useful to sites that run either multiple TCP/IP vendor packages or multiple instances of the same vendor's TCP/IP simultaneously. The `TCPIP_MACH` environment variable can be used to specify the name of the TCP/IP started task. Setting this environment variable is the equivalent of the `TCPIPJOBNAME` configuration keyword within `SYS1.TCPPARMS (TCPDATA)`. The default value for IBM TCP/IP is `TCPIP`.

❑ `TCPIP_DATA=dsn:data.set.name`

This environment variable specifies the fully qualified name of a TCP/IP configuration data set. This keyword is equivalent to the `//SYSTCPD DD` statement described in the section “TCPIP.DATA File” on page 24. Specifying this environment variable will override the `//SYSTCPD DD` definition. This is an IBM TCP/IP only specification.

❑ `ETC_HOSTS=dsn:data.set.name`

This environment variable specifies the fully qualified name of the data set that contains host table name resolution information. The purpose and contents of this file are described in the section “3. Defining Host Tables if a Domain Name server is not available” on page 30. You must specify an `ETC_HOSTS` file if your site does not enable domain name server processing.

❑ `ETC_SERVICES=dsn:data.set.name`

This environment variable specifies the fully-qualified data set name that contains service names and port numbers for SAS products requiring such services. SAS/SHARE and SAS/IntrNet software both require entries in the `ETC_SERVICES` file. The `ETC_SERVICES` file will also be found by SAS if the `DATASETPREFIX` keyword/value in the TCP/IP configuration file specifies an appropriate high level qualifier. See the `TCPIP_PREFIX` environment variable below for further details.

`TCPIP_PREFIX=high.level.qualifier` (environment variable)

`TCPIPPRF=high.level.qualifier` (SAS system option)

This environment variable or option allows for a global specification of a “high-level-qualifier” for the various TCP/IP configuration data sets that have been described previously. The `DATASETPREFIX` keyword/value within the TCP/IP configuration file can also be used to specify this “high-level-qualifier.”

For example, the configuration data sets can be placed under a single high-level-qualifier specification of

```
TCPIPPRF=SYS2.TCP26
```

This would cause the data sets `SYS2.TCP26.TCPIP.DATA`, `SYS2.TCP26.ETC_HOSTS` and `SYS2.TCP26.ETC_SERVICES` to be utilized by SAS as the TCP/IP configuration file, the `ETC_HOSTS` file and the `ETC_SERVICES` file, respectively.

### Specifying the Environment Variable Data Set

The file that contains all environment variables, hereby referred to as the `SASCTCPV` file, should be allocated to the `SASCTCPV DD` with `RECFM=FB` and `LRECL=80`. Do not turn on sequence numbers in the `SASCTCPV` data set and the environment variable must begin in column 1.

If you make use of environment variables, you must allocate the SASCTCPV DD in the JCL or CLIST that executes SAS. For example, if the data set SAS.TCPIP.ENVIRON.DATA contained the desired environment variable information, the allocation statements for BATCH and TSO would read:

```
//SASCTCPV DD DISP=SHR,DSN=SAS.TCPIP.ENVIRON.DATA
```

or

```
ALLOC F(SASCTCPV) DA('SAS.TCPIP.ENVIRON.DATA') SHR
```

Each logical record is assumed to contain an environment variable assignment of the form:

```
environment_variable_name=value.
```

**Note:** SAS options controlling the configuration will override the environment variables set in the SASCTCPV data set.

## 10. Diagnosing Configuration Problems

SAS uses the DDname SASCTCPE for diagnostic information related to TCP/IP processing. To obtain diagnostic information, allocate the DDname SASCTCPE to a permanent data set or SYSOUT. The SASCTCPE must be allocated as SYSOUT or with SYSPRINT DCB attributes. This will enable warnings and errors that might assist in problem determination. This data set can be allocated to DUMMY to prevent error messages from being written to the console or terminal.

**Note:** Executing the SAS code “PROC TCPTEST;” will provide information on how SAS sees the TCP/IP configuration. For details on PROC TCPTEST see SAS Note SN-003294 at the following Web site:

<http://support.sas.com/techsup/unotes/SN/003/003294.html>

## Customizing Your SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

**Note:** You should complete this task if appropriate for your installation.

There are CLIST and PROC examples created in the CNTL DATA SET for invoking SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. All installations of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, whether domestic or foreign, are now encoded images.

Encoded images allow SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to be invoked using different character sets. For example, Wo is English and W3 is German. Other examples of the encoding abbreviations can be found in the *Installation Instructions*.

You can invoke the encoded SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using CLSTxx or PROCxx where xx is the encoding value that can be found in the *Languages, Encodings and Installation Codes* table in the *Installation Instructions*.

The installation job(s) that you ran to complete the installation created tailored versions of the SAS9 CLIST and cataloged procedures. It placed these tailored versions in the CNTL data set and copied them to the default libraries. The tailored CLISTs were written to the CNTL data set as member CLSTxx for the single-byte image and DLSTxx for the double-byte image. The installation job(s) copied them to the command procedure library, &prefix.CLIST. The tailored cataloged procedure was written to the CNTL data set as member PROCxx for the single-byte

image and DROCxx for the double-byte image. The installation job(s) copied it to the procedure library, &prefix.PROCLIB.

**Note:** Only Action A moves the CLIST and cataloged procedure into the default libraries. Actions B and C require that you manually copy and rename CLSTxx and PROCxx to the appropriate libraries.

**Important:** Although not discussed in this guide, if a site chooses to install the entire SAS 9 load LIBRARY into the LINKLST or LPALST, the name chosen for the CLIST can cause a conflict with SAS 9 load modules when implicitly executing a CLIST (for example, "TSO SAS"). Possible circumventions include:

- Execute the CLIST explicitly (for example, "exec 'tso.clist.lib(SAS)'").
- When the SAS CLIST is being invoked from ISPF, add "SAS" to the ISPF TSO Command Table (ISPTCM) as a CLIST with the appropriate FLAGBYTE setting to indicate it is to be treated as a CLIST. See IBM documentation for details.
- Execute the "SAS" CLIST with prefix of % (for example, "TSO %SAS").
- Use a CLIST name other than "SAS."

You can further customize these tailored versions of the CLIST and cataloged procedure. For example, the CLIST includes statements that allocate a permanent SASUSER data library for each user. If no permanent SASUSER data library exists for the user, the CLIST creates one. If you do not want each user at your site to maintain an individual permanent SASUSER data library, you can remove these statements from the CLIST. You might also want to make changes as part of selecting a bundled configuration to run or as part of installing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation in the LPA/ELPA, as previously described. STEP 1 in this section describes some of the changes you might want to make.

Determine the changes you want to make as described in STEP 1 and apply the changes according to your standard procedures. Make the changes to the CLIST and cataloged procedure in the libraries to which they were copied.

#### **STEP 1: Determine the customizations you need.**

Review the following information that discusses changes you might want to make. You might also have some site-specific issues to address.

##### ☐ Product-specific customizations

The appendices describe product-specific customizations that might be required. Review the appendices for the products you are installing to see what customizations to the SAS CLIST and PROC you need.

##### ☐ SASUSER Considerations

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation CLIST allocates a permanent SASUSER data library for each user the first time the user invokes SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. When there is no SASUSER data library allocated to a session, the system by default assigns the SASUSER libref to the temporary

WORK data library. In this case, data written to SASUSER disappears when the WORK data library is deleted.

Although individual SASUSER data libraries are not required, they allow users to take advantage of many interactive features in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. The SAS/ASSIST product uses the SASUSER library to store all SAS data sets created and to save all work (programs, output, and catalogs) from a SAS/ASSIST session. The SAS windowing environment uses this library for storing various types of information. Users can save profiles in their SASUSER data libraries to customize window sizes, function key settings, and other aspects of the SAS full-screen environment. You can use SAS windowing environment SAVE and COPY commands to transfer data or program statements between windows and catalogs in your SASUSER data library. The FORMS command stores forms entries used in printing from the windowing environment.

The default CLIST creates a permanent SASUSER data library for each user who invokes SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using the CLIST statements, as shown in the following:

```

IF &SYSPREF EQ THEN +
    SET &USRPREF=&SYSUID
ELSE +
    SET &USRPREF=SYSPREF

IF &STR(&SASUSER) EQ THEN +
    SET &SASUSER = &STR('&USRPREF..SAS9.SASUSER')
SET STATE = &SYSDSN(&SASUSER)
IF &STATE = OK THEN +
    ALLOC F(&DDASUSR) DA(&SASUSER) OLD REU
ELSE +

IF &STATE = DATASET NOT FOUND THEN DO
    WRITE Warning: SASUSER file does not exist, will be created.
    ALLOC    F(&DDASUSR) DA(&SASUSER) NEW CATALOG +
        SP(30 5) ROUND DSORG(PS) RECFM(F S) +
        BLKSIZE(6144) REU
    END
ELSE DO
    WRITE Warning: SASUSER file: &STATE
    WRITE      SASUSER file not allocated to this session
    END

```

You might want to determine a different naming convention for SASUSER data libraries or alter the default space allocation.

### Special Cataloged Procedure Parameters

The default cataloged procedure includes two symbolic parameters that allow concatenation of user libraries before your SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installation libraries:

- **LOAD=**

The LOAD= parameter allows you to specify a user load library DSN to concatenate before the SAS load library data set.

- **SASAUTO=**

The `SASAUTO=` parameter allows you to specify a user autocall macro library `DSN` to concatenate before the system autocall macro library.

These parameters are intended to provide added flexibility for invoking SAS 9.1.3 Foundation in batch mode. Please note that any existing JCL you use to invoke earlier releases of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation might not work as expected with the new default PROC. If large volumes of production JCL at your site contain DD overrides for `//SASAUTOS` and `//STEPLIB`, you might want to customize the `SAS9 PROC` to change the concatenation order of the data sets for these DD statements.

- **Entry Name Considerations**

If you plan to run a bundled configuration, change the default `ENTRY` name in your CLIST and cataloged procedure. The default is `SAS`. Valid standard `ENTRY` names are as follows:

- `SAS` for z/OS non-bundled configuration
- `SASB` for z/OS non-LPA bundled configuration
- `SASLPA` for z/OS LPA bundled configuration.

See the sections “Selecting a Bundled Configuration” on page 15 and “Installing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation into the LPA/ELPA” on page 16 for considerations relating to `ENTRY` name selection.

- **Running Multiple Versions of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Concurrently**

If your users run multiple versions of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation concurrently in the same TSO session, you might also want to customize the CLIST to avoid `DDname` conflicts.

To do so, determine a naming convention for the SAS file `DDnames` allocated, such as `WORK`, and specify your `DDnames` in the CLIST. The CLIST includes special `DDname` operands for you to use when specifying your SAS file `DDnames`. When you use these operands, the CLIST specifies the appropriate corresponding SAS system options for you. Specify alternate `DDnames` in this manner for any files that would cause conflicts at your site.

- **Further DDname Considerations**

Like the Version 6 SAS System, note that SAS 9.1.3 Foundation no longer uses the FORTRAN-style `DDnames` that were used in Version 5 for the SAS log, print, and `PARMS` data sets. If you want to use the same `DDnames` in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation as in Version 5, you need to customize your CLIST, PROC, and system default options.

Customize the CLIST and PROC by changing the `DDnames` as follows:

- change `SASLOG` to `FT11F001`
- change `SASLIST` to `FT12F001`
- change `SASPARM` to `FT15F001`.

Customize your default options by adding the following option values to your `DFLTPTS` table or system configuration file.

- `LOG=FT11F001`
- `PRINT=FT12F001`
- `PARMCARDS=FT15F001`

If you need more information about these options, page 13 of the section “Setting up SAS 9.1.3 Foundation” contains details on customizing your `DFLTPTS` table and system configuration file.

## ❑ SORT Library Considerations

If your users run `PROC SORT` and your site does not provide your system sort routine in a linklist library, set the `SORTLINK CLIST` operand to null and specify the load library that contains your system sort routine in the `SORTLDSN` operand. In the cataloged procedure, concatenate your system sort load library to the `STEPLIB DD` statement.

**STEP 2:**        **Make the CLIST and PROC changes according to standard procedures at your site.**

## Customizing Your NEWS File

**Note:** You should complete this task if appropriate for your installation.

The installation process unloads the default `NEWS` member into your `&prefix.NEWS` partitioned data set. You can update this member with information appropriate for your site.

Information contained in the `NEWS` data set is displayed on the SAS log at invocation time when the `NEWS=` SAS system option is specified. The `NEWS=` option specifies either a logical or a physical name for the `NEWS` data set. The default system configuration files loaded into your `CNTL` data set at installation time contain the `NEWS=` system option specifying the physical name of the `NEWS` member in the `NEWS` data set allocated by the installation jobs. You can modify the `NEWS` member to contain any information appropriate for your site, or, if you do not want to display standard information at invocation time, you can remove the `NEWS=` option from your system configuration files.

## Installing the SAS 9.1.3 SVC Routine

**Note:** This task is optional, but recommended.

**STEP 1:**        **Decide whether to install the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine.**

In most cases, where the function provided or supported by the SVC routine is not utilized or required, installation of the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine is *not* absolutely necessary. However, this step should be completed for the following reasons:

- At a later time it might be decided to utilize the otherwise unavailable functions.
- A SAS product might be acquired which requires the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine.

Installation of the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is **absolutely required** in any of these six situations:

- The SMF SAS system option is used to write SAS user SMF records.
- SAS/SHARE 9.1.3 product is installed.
- The SAS/IntrNet product is installed and `PROC APPSRV` is used with the `AUTH=HOST` option.
- The SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS or SAS/CONNECT to the same multi-process machine on z/OS is to be implemented.
- The SAS/Integration Technologies Object Spawner is installed.
- You are installing either the OLAP server or the OMR server in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and you will be running these servers with the `SECURITY` option enabled (the default).

**Note:** For all products requiring the SAS/CONNECT Spawner or the SAS/Integration Technologies Object Spawner, please refer to the System Requirements documentation.

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine provides all the functions available with the SAS SVC in previous releases and can be used in place of prior releases' SAS SVC routines. However, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is not compatible with prior releases of the SAS SVC routine. Therefore, if the SAS SVC routine is to be used with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine must be installed.

### System Integrity Guidelines

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine has been designed, written and tested using IBM guidelines for system integrity. When installed properly, the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine cannot be used to obtain control in an authorized state, nor bypass system security or password protection.

#### STEP 2: Select the type of SVC to install.

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine can be installed in one of two ways:

- As a Type 4 Extended Support Router SVC (ESR SVC 109) entry. It is recommended that the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine be installed as a Type 4 ESR SVC (SVC 109). This technique has several advantages. One is that a user SVC reserved exclusively for the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is not required. Additionally, if the Type 4 ESR SVC routing code chosen is selected for use by another software vendor, it is relatively easy to change the routing code used by the SAS SVC.  
To choose the Type 4 ESR SVC (SVC 109) routing code to use, first determine which routing codes are already installed or in use by the operating system or other software products. To do this, list the names of members beginning with `IGX00` in the `SYS1.LPALIB` and all other libraries listed in the `LPALSTxx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB`. Also check the `IEALPAXx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB` for `IGX00nnn` modules that can be placed in MLPA. The `nnn` suffix is the routing code (always in decimal) by which the ESR SVC routine is invoked. For example, the ESR SVC routine `IGX00219` would be invoked by loading register 15 with the decimal value 219 and then executing an SVC 109 instruction. IBM has reserved routing codes between 200-255 for customer use under z/OS. SAS recommends that you choose a routing code within this range. However, the default routing code is 4, for compatibility with previous releases of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. It is necessary to choose an unused routing code to ensure its integrity.
- As a standard "user" SVC (SVC Routines 200-255) defined in member `IEASVCxx` of `SYS1.PARMLIB`. To install the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC as a "user" SVC routine, ensure that the selected user SVC number is currently unused. Check the `IEASVCxx` member in `SYS1.PARMLIB`. For example, to install the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC as SVC 200, code the following `SVC Parm` statement in `IEASVCxx`:

```
SVC Parm 200, REPLACE, TYPE(4)
```

Note that the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is installed as a Type 4, preemptive, unauthorized SVC with no locks held.

The first "load" of a Type 4 SVC routine is named according to z/OS convention. That is `IGC00nnc`, where `nnc` is the zoned EBCDIC representation of the SVC routine's number, resulting from the unpacking of the positive, packed decimal value that is the SVC routine number. For example, the first load of a Type 4 SVC routine invoked using SVC 234 would be named `IGC0023D`. This is because `x'234'`, when unpacked, yields `x'F2F3C4'` or `C'23D'`.

**STEP 3: Copy and Rename the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine into SYS1.LPALIB or a LNKSTxx library.**

Copy and rename the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC into `SYS1.LPALIB` or any other LPA library pointed to by the `LPALSTxx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB`. Optionally, the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC can be installed into a `LNKSTxx` library and brought into LPA at IPL time by a specification in the `IEALPAxx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB` and an `MLPA=xx` specification in the `IEASYS00` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB`.

The load module (`SVC0MVS`) must be installed into `SYS1.LPALIB` (or other appropriate library) with a valid SVC name. A utility like `IEBCOPY` could be used to copy the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine into an appropriate LPA library. Refer to member `SVC0COPYJ` in your `&prefix.BAMISC` SAS installation library for a sample job.

Alternatively, `SMP/E` can be used to install the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC as an `SMP/E USERMOD`. Refer to member `SVC0SMPJ` in your `&prefix.BAMISC` SAS installation library for a sample job.

You must IPL after the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine is actually copied into an appropriate operating system library. Specify the `CLPA` parameter in response to the `IEA101A` message.

**STEP 4: Verify and update SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for the SAS SVC.**

If the default values are not used, these options need to be set in the Restricted Options Table. See “Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files” on page 9 for details on creating a Restricted Options Table.

The following SAS system options are directly related to the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine and the manner in which it is installed. You must set these options as described in the following to invoke the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine correctly.

❑ **SVC0SVC=**

The default is `109` for the ESR SVC `109`. If using the “user” SVC instead of the ESR SVC, this option should be set to the SVC number that was defined in STEP 2.

❑ **SVC0R15=**

This option only applies if the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC was installed as an ESR Type 4 SVC. The default is `4` for compatibility with previous releases of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. It should specify the routing code that was chosen when the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC was installed into your operating system.

**STEP 5: Verify and update SAS 9.1.3 options for the SAS TK SVC.**

**Note:** *This section is for the SAS/CONNECT Spawner, the Integration Technologies Object Spawner, and any product that requires these two products.*

If the default values are not used, the options need to be set in the `'&prefix.TKMVSENV (TKMVSENV)` data set with the file reference of `TKMVSENV`.

The following SAS TK options are directly related to the SAS 9.1.3 SVC routine and the manner in which it is installed. You must set these options as described below to invoke the SAS 9.1.3 SVC routine correctly.

- `set TKOPT_SVCNO=`

The default value is 109 for the ESR SVC 109. If using the “user” SVC instead of the ESR SVC, this option should be set to the SVC number that was defined in STEP 2.

- `set TKOPT_SVCR15=`

This option only applies if the SAS 9.1.3 SVC was installed as an ESR Type 4 SVC. The default is 4 for compatibility with previous releases of SAS 9.1.3. It should specify the routing code that was chosen when the SAS 9.1.3 SVC was installed into your operating system.

## Installing the SAS SMF Exit

**Note:** This procedure is optional.

The `SMF` SAS system option controls whether SMF records formatted by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation are written to the SMF file at the termination of every SAS Software step. If you intend to enable the SMF option in order to write SMF records, and if you would like to tailor the SMF records that SAS 9.1.3 Foundation writes, you must install the SMF exit and set the `SMFEXIT=` system option.

### STEP 1: Decide whether you need to install the SMF exit.

You can use the SMF exit to examine the SMF record that SAS 9.1.3 Foundation has formatted, modify fields within the record, write the record to a user file, and suppress the writing of the record by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

**Note:** If SMF records are to be written to the SMF file, the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC must be installed. Please see “Installing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine” on page 36 for more information.

The use of the SMF exit is entirely optional. Even if it is not installed, records are written to the SMF file if the `SMF` and `STIMER` options are in effect and the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is installed. If you install the SMF exit, you can still use the `SMFEXIT=` option to specify whether or not it is to be invoked. If you do not specify the `SMFEXIT=` option, the exit is not invoked. If the value specified is the name of a load module in the search path, the exit is invoked.

### STEP 2: Tailor the SMF exit source to meet the requirements of your site.

The sample SMF exit is an assembler source module that must be modified to suit your needs. The source for the sample SMF exit is in the `BAMISC` library member `SMFEXIT`.

**Note:** In the z/OS environment, the exit is entered in `AMODE 31`. If you are writing to a user file using an access method that requires you to be in `AMODE 24`, change `AMODE` for the access method calls, then return to `AMODE 31` before returning from the exit.

The exit is called at SAS 9.1.3 Foundation initialization, at SAS Software step termination, and at SAS 9.1.3 Foundation termination. At entry to the exit, `R15` contains the entry point address, `R14` contains the return address, `R13` points to a standard register save area, and `R1` contains the address of a fullword. If the fullword is 0, the call is being made after SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is initialized so that the exit can perform any initialization necessary. If your exit is writing records to a user file, you probably want to open the file on this call. If the fullword is -1, the call is being

made before SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is terminated so that the exit can perform any termination necessary. If your exit is writing records to a user file, you probably want to close the file on this call. If the fullword contains neither 0 nor -1, it is assumed to be the address of the SMF record to be written.

If the exit returns 0 in R15, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation writes the SMF record pointed to by R1. If the exit returns a non-zero value in R15, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation suppresses the writing of the SMF record. The following approaches might be taken in the exit:

- Zero R15 and return immediately to write the SMF record, as is.
- Return immediately leaving a non-zero value in R15 to suppress the writing of the record.
- Modify the record pointed to by R1, as desired, including adding data in the user area provided, or perhaps changing the record type. Note, however, that record type must be greater than 127. If it is not, the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC does not write the record to the SMF file. Note also that the record length in the standard header on input does not include the user area. If data is added in this area, the length field must be incrementally lengthened by the number of bytes added. Return a 0 in R15 to cause SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to write the modified SMF record.
- Modify the record pointed to by R1, as desired, and write the record to a user file. In this case, record-type checking is up to you. Return a non-zero value in R15 to cause SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to suppress writing of the SMF record. The format of the record formatted by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is as follows:

Hex Offset	SMFRECD	DSECT		
00	SMFRLLEN	DS	BL2	Record length
02	SMFSEGE	DS	BL2	Segment descriptor
04	SMFFLG	DS	BL1	Header flag
05	SMFRTYPE	DS	BL1	Record type
06	SMFTIME	DS	BL4	Time given to smf
0A	SMFDATE	DS	PL4	Date given to smf
0E	SMFSID	DS	CL4	System id
12	SMFJOBNAME	DS	CL8	Jobname
1A	SMFRTIME	DS	BL4	Reader time
1E	SMFRDTE	DS	PL4	Reader date
22	SMFSTEP	DS	XL1	Step number
23	SMFRSVD	DS	XL1	Reserved
24	SMFPROC	DS	CL8	Proc name
2C	SMFCPU	DS	F	Proc CPU time in timer units
30	SMFEXCP	DS	F	Proc excp count
34	SMFCORE	DS	F	Proc storage used
38	SMFVUSE	DS	F	Vector usage in .01 sec
3C	SMFVAFF	DS	F	Vector affinity time in .01 sec
40	SMFHSP	DS	F	RSM hiperspace time in .01 sec
44	SMFUSER	DS	XL64	User space (Not included in SMFLEN)

**STEP 3: Assemble and link the tailored source.**

The JCL required to assemble and link the SMF exit is located in member `BASMF` in the `CNTL` data set. You can tailor the link step so that the name supplied on the `ENTRY` statement is the entry point that you want to use when invoking the exit. `SMFEXIT1`, which is the name on the `ENTRY` statement in the JCL, is the entry point in the sample SMF exit that simply zeroes `R15` and returns, causing the SMF record to be written to the SMF file as formatted by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

**STEP 4: If your site requirements dictate that SMF always be ON, and that the SMFEXIT= always be set, ensure that SMF, SMFTYPE=, SMFEXIT=, STIMER, SVCoSVC=, and SVCOR15= are set in the Restricted Options Table.**

See “Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files” on page 9 of this document for more information.

## Installing UNIX File System Components

Beginning with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, products might include additional optional functionality provided through Java. In SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, these include:

- Base SAS
- SAS/ACCESS Interface to R/3
- SAS Enterprise Miner
- SAS/GRAPH support for the `javaimg` device
- SAS IT Resource Management
- SAS/OR
- SAS/SECURE

If you want to use this functionality, you need to install components into the UNIX file system. This section documents the steps necessary to install the components.

The installation of the UNIX file system components of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS requires seven steps:

1. **Important:** Validate/determine the UNIX File System Components directory structure.
2. Verify or obtain permissions, or enlist z/OS system personnel required to do steps 3, 4 and 7.
3. Allocate the HFS data set to contain the UNIX file system for the SAS components (manually, or run the `HFSCREAT` utility).
4. Mount the data set to enable UNIX file system space for the SAS components (manually or run the `HFSMOUNT` utility).
5. Run the `USSUNTAR` utility to install the SAS components into the UNIX file system.
6. Update system environment variables to access the SAS components.
7. Assign a permanent mount point for the file system in `SYS1 . PARMLIB (BPXPRMxx)` .

**STEP 1: Important: Validate or determine the UNIX File System Components directory structure.**

The three utilities mentioned above are created by SASINew or SASIHOLD in actions A, B, or C, at the same time the main install is created, using the same SASEditP values used to generate the main install. They will be found afterward in the installation control data set, abbreviated &CNTLDSN.

These utilities will use default values for the HFS container data set and for the directory structure.

**Important:** *It is **highly recommended** that the installer use the default values for the UNIX file system SAS directory root without modification. These values will guarantee the ability to properly apply any possible maintenance or additional product material in the future. If the system personnel accomplish steps 3 and 4 without using the supplied utilities, they should still use the mount path specified in &CNTLDSN (HFSMOUNT). Also, mixed case characters must be preserved in order to maintain the integrity of the HFS directory structure.*

The directory structure root will default to:

```
/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/USER.PREFIXyy
```

where

- /usr/lpp/SAS/ is assigned by IBM for SAS applications.
- /usr/lpp/SAS/SAS\_9.1/ is the mount point used by default by &CNTLDSN (HFSMOUNT).
- USER.PREFIX is the high-level prefix specified by the installer in &CNTLDSN (SASEditP), abbreviated as "&prefix" and used by the main install for allocating traditional z/OS data sets, etc.
- yy represents the encoding found in the "Encode (yy) value" column in the "Languages, Encodings, and Installation Codes" table in *Installation Instructions for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS*.

The utilities supplied use the hierarchical file system (HFS). If you are running z/OS and would like to use the zSeries file system (zFS), consult the appropriate IBM z/OS manuals identified in the steps below.

**STEP 2: Verify or obtain permissions, or enlist z/OS system personnel required to execute steps 3, 4, and 7.**

These steps will likely require the involvement of the z/OS UNIX Systems Services system administrator (sysadmin) as well as of the z/OS Systems Programmer (sysprog).

Showing the generated HFSCREAT and HFSMOUNT JCL jobs to system personnel might suffice to explain what is needed.

System personnel might choose to accomplish steps 3 and/or 4 without using the supplied utilities. They might run the utilities themselves. Or they might provide the installer appropriate permissions and have the installer run the utilities. Step 5 should always be done using the USSUNTAR utility and should be run by the installer to establish correct HFS permissions. Step 6 should be done by the installer or whoever has knowledge of user customizing needs. Step 7 should be completed by a systems programmer.

If the installer has or is given appropriate permissions, then language below referring to z/OS systems personnel should be read as directing the installer.

**STEP 3:        Allocate the HFS data set to contain the UNIX file system for the SAS components (manually, or run HFSCREAT utility).**

This step allocates the z/OS HFS data set that will contain the UNIX style file system directories and files of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS. We recommend that you install these components into their own file system to simplify copy, backup, and recovery. The instructions presume HFS is being used.

As part of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS installation procedure, the SASINew or SASIHOLD job generated the batch jobs to create and mount an HFS data set. The JCL to create the HFS data set is &CNTLDSN(HFSCREAT) . The JCL was tailored based on the &prefix high level qualifier and parameters used for allocating traditional data sets for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

System personnel might use this job as an explanation of the work required and accomplish the tasks with local means, or they might verify or adjust the JCL and parameters and submit the job. The **name** of the HFS data set is not critical and should be modified to suit your local needs. The HFSMOUNT utility in step 4 will need to be modified to match the chosen HFS data set name.

If the traditional data sets were allocated using VOLSER allocation, then all the SMS parameters will have to be provided in HFSCREAT. If SMS was used to allocate traditional data sets, then those parms will be present in the generated HFSCREAT. Verify that the SMS parms used in HFSCREAT are proper for the HFS data set.

An excellent reference for further details on creating and mounting an HFS data set is the chapter “Managing the Hierarchical File System” in *UNIX System Services Planning*. For information on using a zSeries file system (zFS), consult *Distributed File Services zFS Administration*.

**STEP 4:        Mount the data set to enable UNIX file system space for the SAS components (manually or run HFSMOUNT utility).**

In this step you mount the z/OS data set that contains the file system based components of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS to the appropriate mount point in the file system hierarchy. The example uses HFS. This job should be run by the z/OS UNIX System Services Administrator (sysadmin) who has root user and group authority (uid=0 and gid=0) and SAF create access to the data set.

As part of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS installation procedure, the SASINew or SASIHOLD job generated the batch jobs to create and mount an HFS data set. The JCL to mount the HFS data set is &CNTLDSN(HFSMOUNT) . The JCL was tailored based on the &prefix high level qualifier and parameters used for allocating traditional data sets for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

System personnel might use this job as explanation of the work required and accomplish the task with local means, or they might verify or adjust the JCL and parameters and submit the job.

**Note:** *If the name of the HFS data set in the HFSCREAT utility was modified in step 3, it will need to be modified to match in HFSMOUNT.*

**Use of the default directory structure is strongly recommended.** If the job is modified, it is important to retain the default mount point to match the directory path assumed by the

&CNTLDSN (USSUNTAR) utility. This will ensure that later installations can find, analyze, and add to this structure without requiring significant manual editing of program language to match non-default directory structures known only to the original installer.

Note that a security problem can occur with mounting if your site has defined several superuser IDs and they have different GIDs. Caching of user information by the security package (for example, RACF) can cause retrieval of the wrong GID for a given UID. IBM recommends that you do not define different user IDs with the same UID.

An excellent reference for further details on mounting an HFS is the chapter “Managing the Hierarchical File System” in *UNIX System Services Planning*. If you want to instead use a zSeries file system (zFS), consult *Distributed File Services zFS Administration*.

## **STEP 5: Run USSUNTAR utility to install the SAS components into the UNIX file system.**

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS file system components are shipped in a ‘tar file.’ This file contains components written by the UNIX System Services tar (tape archive) utility. This utility, as well as the pax utility, can read the contents of a tar file and install them into a file system. For a description of the tar and pax utilities, refer to their manpages (man tar or man pax from a USS shell prompt) or to the chapter “Shell Command Descriptions” in *UNIX System Services Command Reference*. For details about the contents of tar files, consult the “File Formats” appendix of the *UNIX System Services Command Reference*.

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS installation created an MVS partitioned data set (PDS) containing the tar file members in < USER.PREFIX >.TARFILES. The &CNTLDSN (USSUNTAR) job contains shell scripts and invocations of the pax utility which have been customized to the installed product mix, so that it is unnecessary to separately download the tar file to the HFS or zFS. All that is needed is to run USSUNTAR.

If an installed product has additional functionality enabled by HFS content, the USSUNTAR job will already contain the needed unload and untar language. The content of individual tar files is not provided, and although this work could be done “by hand,” use of USSUNTAR guarantees that all the content for the customer’s products is transferred and is in the default (expected) directories so that later customization is simplified or eliminated. ***Use of the default directory structure is strongly recommended.***

**Important:** *If the UNIX System Services root directory for your SAS installation cannot use the default directory specified in the INSTALL\_DIR= line, edit the INSTALL\_DIR= line in the USSUNTAR member of the installation control dataset AND in any installation control dataset members beginning with "USUT" IF such members exist. For some customers, one or more USUT\* members may be placeholder jobs only and not contain an INSTALL\_DIR= line. This is not an error and such members can be ignored.*

The components stored in the tar files include directories and files. Component attributes such as the owner and permissions are also stored in the tar file. In extracting the components, you will want to preserve the permission bits but reset the owner to the SAS administrator at your site. To accomplish this, the &CNTLDSN (USSUNTAR) job should be submitted for execution by the SAS administrator whose user ID was the user of record in the allocation of the traditional z/OS data sets in the main install.

**STEP 6: Update system environment variables to access the SAS components.**

Once the file system is allocated and its ownership and permissions are set, update system environment variables to provide access to the SAS program library, the SAS Java native-method DLL library, and SAS Java class libraries, as follows:

```
export steplib="$STEPLIB:&prefix.library"
export libpath="$LIBPATH:$JAVA_HOME/bin:$JAVA_HOME/bin/classic:/usr
                /lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/USER.PREFIX/bin"
export classpath="$JAVA_HOME/lib:/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/USER.PREFIX/hostcm"
```

This syntax assumes that the environment variable `JAVA_HOME` has been previously defined. If this environment variable has not been defined, you either need to define it or to supply the explicit path to the installation directory of the Java Developer's Kit (JDK) in place of `JAVA_HOME` in the `LIBPATH` and `CLASSPATH` variables.

In this example, you access the SAS program library through an update to the `STEPLIB` environment variable, the SAS Java native-method DLL and the SAS Java proxy through an update to the `LIBPATH` environment variable, and the SAS Java class libraries through an update to the `CLASSPATH` environment variable. You can update */etc/profile* to make these changes available to all users, or you can update the `.profile` file in the home directory for specific users that require access to the file system based functionality. For details about customizing the UNIX System Services environment, see the section "Customizing the UNIX Shells" in the chapter "Customizing the Shells and Utilities" of IBM's *UNIX System Services Planning* document.

**STEP 7: Assign a permanent mount point for the file system in BPXPRMxx of 'SYS1.PARMLIB'.**

Once the file system is allocated and its ownership and permissions set, update the UNIX Systems Services configuration file `BPXPRMxx` in `'SYS1.PARMLIB'` to specify a permanent mount point for the file system components of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS. This will ensure that the components are always available. You might want to mount the file system in read-only mode. This will prevent accidental corruption of the files. In a `SYSPLEX` environment, this will also improve performance, as cross system communication to maintain the integrity of the file system is not necessary.

Use the `MOUNT` statement in `BPXPRMxx` to permanently mount the file system. The `xx` suffix is set by the `OMVS=xx` specification in `IEASYSxx` or by operator reply to the system startup IPL message using the `OMVS=xx` parameter. For details about the syntax of the `MOUNT` statement, consult the chapter "BPXPRMxx (z/OS UNIX System Services Parameters)" of the *MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference*.

```
MOUNT FILESYSTEM('&prefix.SAS.VERS9.HFS')
      TYPE(HFS)
      MOUNTPPOINT('/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1')
      MODE(READ)
      NOSETUID
```

## Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform

Java is a programming environment or platform first developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. You can find background information at Sun's Java Web site: <http://java.sun.com>. IBM and other vendors provide their own implementations of Java for use by their customers.

Beginning with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, a small number of new features require the use of IBM's Java Software Developer's Kit (SDK). For backward compatibility, no previously existing functionality in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation requires an SDK. If you do not want to install an SDK, SAS will run, but you will not be able to take advantage of the new features that require an SDK. If you decide at a later time that you want to use the new features, you can install an appropriate SDK and configure SAS 9.1.3 Foundation as described in the steps below.

**Note:** *JAVA, JAVAIMG, ACTIVEX, and JAVAMETA all require the SDK (JRE on most systems), although they are not new to SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Usage of these device drivers is optional, but the JAVAIMG device driver is used by default for graphs created by stored processes on non-Windows systems. If your configuration is part of a BI installation, you should configure for Java, or tell all creators of stored processes to specify a different default device driver such as PNG or GIF.*

The following new features in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation require an SDK:

- SAS/GRAPH support for the `javaimg` device
- SAS REPORT procedure

Complete the following steps to configure SAS for use with the Java Platform:

### STEP 1: Determine the version or release of the SDK that you need.

Visit the SAS "Third Party Software Downloads" Web page at <http://support.sas.com/thirdpartysupport> to determine the version or release of the SDK required by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. This Web page contains the most accurate and up-to-date information about Java software downloads needed by SAS.

If you already have an SDK installed on your system, identify the version or release of the SDK and verify that it meets the requirements shown on the "Third Party Software Downloads" page.

### STEP 2: Install and configure the SDK.

If you have not installed a version or release of an SDK that is specified on the "Third Party Software Downloads" Web page (<http://support.sas.com/thirdpartysupport>) you need to install and configure an SDK now. Click the appropriate **Download** button on the "Third Party Software Downloads" page and be sure to follow the instructions on the IBM download site.

For more information about IBM's implementation of Java you can visit <http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/software/java>, and click **Links**.

### STEP 3: Set TKMVSENV options.

`&prefix.TKMVSENV` is a fixed block data set that is allocated at install time, where `&prefix` is the High Level-Qualifier of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installation libraries. Its purpose is to contain options that SAS uses to run Java. Before you attempt to use SAS features requiring Java, you must ensure that entries from the following list are provided in the TKMVSENV member located in the `&prefix.TKMVSENV` data set. Those entries must set the options to appropriate values for your SAS installation.

**Options SAS Uses to Start Java**

TKMVSENV Command	Status	Meaning
set TKJNI_OPT_LIBPATH=	Required	Specifies the paths of Java shared libraries that SAS uses on z/OS. The most important of these libraries is libjvm.so. libjvm.so uses other libraries, including libjtc.so. Colons delimit the paths in the specification. SAS uses this option like a LIBPATH environment variable in UNIX System Services.
set TKJNI_OPT_PROXYPATH=	Required	Specifies a path that provides an external link to the JPROXY load module. See Step 5 for more information about external links.
set TKJNI_OPT_DISPLAY=	Required	Specifies the name of an X server or X server pool. SAS uses this option like a DISPLAY environment variable in UNIX System Services.
set TKJNI_OPT_LEOPTS=	Required	Specifies that XPLink linkage will be used to call the JVM. This option <u>must</u> specify 'XPLINK (ON)', as shown in the examples below.

For example, the TKMVSENV member might look like the following:

**Note:** The colon (:) is a delimiter on these lines.

```
Reset                      Clear all values
set TKJNI_OPT_LIBPATH=/java/bin/classic:/java/bin
set TKJNI_OPT_PROXYPATH=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/TEST.SAS.V9W0/jproxy
set TKJNI_OPT_DISPLAY='your.x.server:0'
set TKJNI_OPT_LEOPTS='XPLINK (ON)'
```

The TEST.SAS.V9W0 in this example is your install *user.prefix* value.

**STEP 4: Customize SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options.**

SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option JREOPTIONS is used to pass Java options when SAS starts the Java Virtual Machine. The following options are required to configure Java to run SAS applications. They specify the location of the SAS jar files as well as information about how SAS's Java classes should be loaded and executed.

Options	Status	Description
-Dsas.app.class.dirs	Required	Specifies the path where SAS jar files are located.
-Djava.security.policy	Required	Specifies the location of the sas.policy file.
-Djava.class.path	Required	Specifies the location of the sas.launcher.jar file.

Options	Status	Description
<code>-Djava.system.class.loader</code>	Required	Specifies "com.sas.app.AppClassLoader." This option is always the same, regardless of where SAS is installed.
<code>-Dsas.ext.config</code>	Required	Specifies the location of the <code>sas.java.ext.config</code> file.
<code>-DPFS_TEMPLATE</code>	Required	Specifies the location of the <code>qrpfstpt.xml</code> file.

Edit the JREOPTIONS line in the BATnn and TSOnn config files in the `&prefix.CNTL` data set. Add all of the required options listed above and, where appropriate, assign values to them that reflect the location of the required files in your SAS installation. Any content beyond column 72 must begin in column 1 of the next line, and the method continued for as many lines as needed.

For example the JREOPTIONS= value may look like the following:

```
JREOPTIONS=(-Djava.security.policy=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/TEST.SAS.V9W0/MVS/s
as.policy -Djava.class.path=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/TEST.SAS.V9W0/hostcm/sas.launc
her.jar -Djava.system.class.loader=com.sas.app.AppClassLoader -Dsas.app.
class.dirs=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/TEST.SAS.V9W0/avdobj/:/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9
.1/TEST.SAS.V9W0/hostcm/ -Dsas.ext.config=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/TEST.SAS.
V9W0/MVS/sas.java.ext.config -DPFS_TEMPLATE=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/TEST.SAS.V9W
0/hostcm/qrpfstpt.xml)
```

where JREOPTIONS starts in column 2, the first six lines end in column 72, the second through seventh lines start in column one, and the options are enclosed in parentheses. Note that TEST.SAS.V9W0 in this example is your install *user.prefix* value.

#### STEP 5: Set up the external link for JPROXY.

External links are a special type of symbolic link described in the "OS/390 UNIX System Services User's Guide (SC28-1891-10)." The TKJNI\_OPT\_PROXYPATH option (described in Step 3) is used to provide the location of an external link that gives the member name of SAS's JPROXY load module. This external link must be in place so that z/OS can perform a library search to find JPROXY in SAS's load libraries when SAS starts Java.

You can use the following UNIX System Services commands to check if the external link to JPROXY is in place. If, for example, you set the value of TKJNI\_OPT\_PROXYPATH to `/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/user.prefix/myproxy`, you can check for JPROXY's external link by entering:

```
cd /usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1/user.prefix
ls -la
```

You should see an entry like this:

```
myjproxy -> JPROXY
```

If there is no entry for the external link, you need to create one. You can do so by executing the following command from the directory that TKJNI\_OPT\_PROXYPATH specifies:

```
ln -e JPROXY myjproxy
```

After entering this command you should see the external link entry for JPROXY in the directory TKJNI\_OPT\_PROXYPATH specifies.

## STEP 6: Set the Region Size.

The region size of a typical SAS job needs to be increased when features are used that incorporate Java. The increase will vary depending upon the application. At a minimum, regions for SAS jobs using Java require 200 MB. For a batch job, add either `REGION=200M` or `REGION=204800K` to the JOB card. For a TSO session, specify `SIZE(204800)`.

## Locating Hot Fixes

Occasionally, SAS might find it necessary to supply "hot fixes" in order to quickly correct reported problems in a SAS installation. A hot fix is a fix, along with installation instructions and an audit file, used to repair a specific reported problem, or problems, built on specific host(s), tested for accuracy, and immediately delivered via the World Wide Web. An audit file enables Tech Support consultants to determine which hot fixes have been installed. Hot fixes are located at <http://ftp.sas.com/techsup/download/hotfix/hotfix.html> and organized in several ways: by host, by release, and by product.

When hot fixes are released, the information regarding the hosts involved, the products involved, and/or the problems resolved by the hot fix are posted to TSNEWS-L, the SAS Technical Support listserv (information about subscribing to this listserv is available on the SAS Order Information Letter in your installation kit). Once you receive an email from TSNEWS-L that you think might affect your SAS installation, go to the above Web site and click on the "Latest Hot Fixes" link to find more specific information before downloading and installing the appropriate fixes.

Hot fixes address software issues uncovered by customer applications. For some customers, a hot fix provides a quick solution to an immediate problem. For others, it is system maintenance. Hot fixes have been tested and are fully supported.

By comparison, a Service Pack is a software update containing system enhancements and bug fixes in one installable package. Service Packs are available only for SAS 9.1.3 (9.1 TS1M3). Service Packs contain all previously released SAS 9.1.3 hot fixes. The individual hot fixes contained in a Service Pack are no longer available for separate download. For more information, please see "Chapter 3 — Installing SAS Service Packs for z/OS" on page 57.



## Chapter 2 — Post-Installation Configuration for National Language Support (NLS)

This chapter contains information on post-installation configuration for Asian and European language support.

### ***Chinese, Japanese, and Korean DBCS Support***

This section provides information about Asian font catalogs. It also describes the three SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options you should use to set the DBCS encoding for Asian DBCS character sets.

- DBCS
- DBCSLANG
- DBCSTYPE

#### **DBCS System Option**

The DBCS system option indicates that all text, input, output, and data should be processed as if it is encoded in a double-byte character set. This option is used to process Asian DBCS languages such as Chinese (both Simplified and Traditional), Japanese, and Korean.

- DBCS is a Boolean option whose values are either DBCS or NODBCS.
- DBCS (specifies that SAS 9.1.3 Foundation process double-byte character sets)
- NODBCS (specifies that SAS 9.1.3 Foundation not process double-byte character sets)

The default value set by SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is NODBCS.

#### **DBCSLANG System Option**

The DBCSLANG= system option specifies which double-byte character set (DBCS) is in use.

**Note:** *This option does not accept abbreviations for the language value.*

The following table provides valid DBCSLANG values for each character set:

Character Set	DBCSLANG Value
Simplified Chinese	CHINESE
Japanese	JAPANESE
Korean	KOREAN
Traditional Chinese	TAIWANESE

When DBCS extensions are in effect, Japanese is the default value.

**Note:** *All values of DBCSLANG require that you specify a value of IBM for the DBCSTYPE system option.*

#### **DBCSTYPE System Option**

The DBCSTYPE= system option specifies the type of double-byte character set (DBCS) encoding method. The only valid value for DBCSTYPE is IBM (which specifies the IBM encoding method).

## Asian Font Catalogs

With the exception of Traditional Chinese fonts, Asian fonts reside in the SASHELP.FONT catalog. (Note, though, that the configuration file for DBCS extensions does **NOT** contain font definitions.) To use Traditional Chinese fonts, you must specify them in your SAS session.

### ***Specifying the Font Catalog in a SAS Session for Traditional Chinese Fonts***

To specify the font catalog in a SAS session, submit the following LIBNAME statement:

```
libname gfontx '<high-level-qualifier>.zt.<font>.GFont';
```

In this statement

- *x* represents a value from 0-9
- *high-level-qualifier* is a user-supplied value
- *font* is the name of the font

## European Language Support

The following sections describe different methods for configuring your system for locale, the use of NONLSCOMPATMODE versus NLSCOMPATMODE, and how to set up your local session to transfer data to a remote session. The last section also provides a list of devmap and keymap values that match the locales on your operating system.

z/OS media is available in the following 12 encoded versions, which support multiple locales and regions. (See the table below for the locale and region values).

- 838 (Thai)
- 870 (Central Europe)
- 1025 (Russia)
- 1047 (United States) – the default
- 1141 (Austria and Germany)
- 1142 (Denmark and Norway)
- 1143/1122 (Finland and Sweden)
- 1144 (Italy)
- 1145 (Spain)
- 1146 (United Kingdom)
- 1147 (France)
- 1148/1130 (International)

When you install SAS 9.1.3 Foundation on z/OS for a given encoding, the installation-generated configuration files set the LOCALE system option to the default value for the encoding installed.

A given SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installation supports one encoding, and sometimes two encodings, along with a specific list of locales that are compatible with those encodings. Specification of any locale that does not appear in the installed configuration file is unsupported, and it will produce unpredictable results.

To verify the EBCDIC code page for the media you received, refer to the following table, which maps countries to appropriate encodings.

## Shipping Map for Countries based on Encoded Media

Country	Code Page Number	Required Media and Data Set Code	Supported Locales
Austria	cp1141	W3	German_Austria
Belgium	cp1148	WB	Dutch_Belgium
Croatia	cp870	C0	Croatian_Croatia
Czech Republic	cp870	C0	Czech_CzechRepublic
Denmark	cp1142	W5	Danish_Denmark
Finland	cp1143/cp1122	W6	Finnish_Finland
France	cp1147	WA	French_France
Germany	cp1141	W3	German_Germany
Hungary	cp870	C0	Hungarian_Hungary
Italy	cp1144	W7	Italian_Italy
North and South America	cp1047	W0	English_Canada; French_Canada; English_UnitedStates; Portuguese_Brazil; Spanish_Argentina; Spanish_Bolivia; Spanish_Chile; Spanish_Colombia; Spanish_Ecuador; Spanish_ElSalvador; Spanish_Mexico; Spanish_Nicaragua; Spanish_Panama; Spanish_Paraguay; Spanish_Peru; Spanish_PuertoRico; Spanish_UnitedStates; Spanish_Uruguay; Spanish_Venezuela
Norway	cp1142	W5	Norwegian_Norway
Poland	cp870	C0	Polish_Poland
Romania	cp870	C0	Romanian_Romania
Russia	cp1025	R0	Russian_Russia
Slovakia	cp870	C0	Slovak_Slovakia
Slovenia	cp870	C0	Slovenian_Slovenia
Spain	cp1145	W8	Spanish_Spain
Sweden	cp1143/cp1122	W6	Swedish_Sweden
Switzerland	cp1148/cp1130	WB	French_Switzerland German_Switzerland Italian_Switzerland
Thailand	cp838	F0	Thai_Thailand
United Kingdom	cp1146	W9	English_UnitedKingdom

Country	Code Page Number	Required Media and Data Set Code	Supported Locales
United States	cp1047	W0	English_UnitedStates
Vietnam	cp1148/cp1130	WB	Vietnamese_Vietnam

**Note:** *SASHELP has been built specifically for your encoding. Therefore, valid values for the LOCALE system option are limited to those values that are consistent with the encoding.*

If you do plan to select a locale other than the default, you might also benefit from the section “Additional Information,” which appears later in this chapter. If you will be running SAS as a server on your platform serving a SAS client on an EBCDIC platform, refer to the section “Locale Setup on the Remote Server,” which appears later in this chapter. Following that section, SAS/GRAPH users will find instructions for setting up the correct devmaps and keymaps in the section “Devmaps and Keymaps for SAS/GRAPH Software.”

## Using NONLSCOMPATMODE versus NLSCOMPATMODE

Starting in this release, the default for the NLSCOMPATMODE option has changed to NONLSCOMPATMODE. The NONLSCOMPATMODE option specifies that data is processed in the session encoding, including reading and writing external files as well as processing SAS syntax and user data. The session encoding is the encoding set in the ENCODING= system option.

On z/OS, some existing programs that ran in previous releases of SAS will no longer run when NONLSCOMPATMODE is in effect. If you have made character substitutions in SAS syntax, you will have to modify your programs to use national characters. For example, a Danish customer who has substituted the Å character for the \$ character in existing SAS syntax will have to update the program to use the \$ in the Danish environment.

Setting the NLSCOMPATMODE system option provides compatibility with previous releases of SAS. Programs that were run in previous releases of SAS will continue to work when NLSCOMPATMODE is specified.

An additional change you will find with NONLSCOMPATMODE is that the appropriate Open Edition version of the EBCDIC encoding will be used as the session encoding, which uses the new-line character as the end-of-line character. NLSCOMPATMODE used the traditional EBCDIC encodings. See the section below titled “New-Line Character and Line-Feed Character” for more information about traditional and Open Edition EBCDIC encodings.

For more information about the NLSCOMPATMODE and NONLSCOMPATMODE system options, refer to the system option documentation for your operating environment.

## New-Line Character and Line-Feed Character

Both the line-feed character and the new-line character appear in EBCDIC encodings, but only the line-feed character appears in ASCII encodings. Much of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation uses the new-line character in EBCDIC to indicate the end of the line.

Because ASCII encodings do not support the new-line character, software running on ASCII platforms always expects the line-feed character to indicate the end of the line. When data is transferred from z/OS to a machine that supports ASCII encodings, formatting problems can occur (particularly in HTML output) because the EBCDIC line-feed is not written in the data stream as an end-of-line character.

SAS supports two sets of EBCDIC-based encodings for z/OS. The encodings that have EBCDIC in their names use the traditional mapping of the EBCDIC line-feed character to the ASCII line-feed character. This mapping can cause data to appear as one stream when the data is transferred to an ASCII platform.

The encodings that use Open Edition in their names use the line-feed character as the end-of-line character. When the data are transferred to an ASCII platform, the EBCDIC new-line character maps to an ASCII line-feed character. This mapping enables ASCII applications to interpret the end-of-line correctly, resulting in better formatting.

## Configuring Your System for Locale

If you want to configure your SAS session for a locale other than the default locale, you have a couple of methods you can use to achieve that goal. This section explains those methods.

### Changing the Default LOCALE Option Setting

When you install SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and you choose to load NLS language translations, the installation automatically sets the LOCALE system option to the default value for the language installed. The LOCALE option is set in the system configuration file for each language installed.

For example, CNTL(TSOWA) sets LOCALE to French by default.

**Note:** *The English\_UnitedStates version sets LOCALE by default.*

If you want to change the default locale setting for SAS, you can set the LOCALE system option to the appropriate language in your system configuration file.

For example, you can edit CNTL(TSOWA) and change `locale=French_France` to `locale=French_Canada`. To change the locale in the file, place an asterisk (\*) in front of the comment line for `locale=French_France` to comment it out. Then, to use the value `French_France`, remove the asterisk in front of the line for `locale=French_France`.

### Running SAS in a Different Locale

To set the locale for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation at your site, add the LOCALE system option to your configuration file. You can find a list of locale values in the *SAS 9.1 National Language Support (NLS) User's Guide*.

When you read or write a file, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation expects the data in the external files to be in the session encoding. To specify a different encoding, refer to the documentation for the ENCODING system option in the FILENAME, INFILE, or FILE statement in the *SAS 9.1 National Language Support (NLS) User's Guide*.

When LOCALE is set, the ENCODING system option will be set to an encoding that supports the language for the locale. SAS 9.1.3 Foundation expects user data to be in the encoding that matches the ENCODING option. If you prefer an encoding other than the most common encoding for the locale, you can also set the ENCODING system option in the configuration file.

If you are running on an EBCDIC platform, the encoding will be an Open Edition encoding rather than the corresponding EBCDIC encoding. EBCDIC and Open Edition encodings are based on the same encoding. However, EBCDIC encodings use a different new-line character. Refer to the earlier section "New-Line Character and Line-Feed Character."

The encoding set by the ENCODING system option will also be used by applications that create output in or that establish communications with applications whose syntax and protocols are not determined by SAS. For example, when ODS generates HTML, RTF, or JavaScript, the output will use, by default, the encoding set by the ENCODING system option. If you want your output to be created using a different encoding, refer to the documentation for the Output Delivery System (ODS).

When the ENCODING option is set, the TRANTAB option will always be set to match the ENCODING system option. The transport format trantabs (translation tables), set by the

TRANTAB option, are used by the CPORT and CIMPORT procedures to transfer SAS data files. These trantabs are also used by the UPLOAD and DOWNLOAD procedures for transferring files and catalogs, remotely submitting code to the server, and returning logs and listings to the client. The Output Delivery System (ODS) creates output using the encoding that matches the ENCODING system option. If you want your output to be created using a different encoding, please refer to the documentation for the Output Delivery System.

For more information, refer to the *Base SAS 9.1 Procedures Guide* in base SAS for documentation about PROC CPORT and PROC CIMPORT. Refer to the *SAS/CONNECT 9.1 User's Guide* for documentation about PROC UPLOAD and PROC DOWNLOAD.

## Additional Information

Depending on the applications you run, additional setup might be required for your system. Refer to the following sections for more information about configuring your system to run with alternate locales.

### ***Locale Setup on the Remote Server***

**Note:** *The %LS( ) macro is new in SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. This macro replaces the functionality of the Locale Setup Window that was used in previous releases. References to "SAS 9" in the following section refer to all releases within SAS 9.*

If you are running SAS 9 as both your client and server sessions, it is not usually necessary to run the %LS( ) macro to do any further locale setup. The locale of a server should be compatible with the locale of your client session; otherwise, your data might be corrupted.

If your SAS 9 client is connecting to a session running a release of SAS prior to SAS 9, you can use the %LS( ) macro to set up the remote SAS environment for data transfer. As the Locale Setup Window did in previous releases, the %LS( ) macro copies the host-to-host translation tables from the LOCALE catalog into SASUSER.PROFILE. The %LS( ) macro does not set the encoding for the SAS session.

If you use SAS/CONNECT to connect to a remote SAS server, you will need to set up the server session for the locale that the SAS client is using. You must set up the server *after* signing on to the remote session from the client.

The following examples show how to set locale for remote connections:

- **Connecting SAS 9-to-SAS 9:** Use the LOCALE option at startup. The LOCALE option value of the SAS client and server sessions should be the same. For example,

```
sas o('locale=Danish_Denmark')
```

- **Connecting SAS 9 and a previous release of SAS:**

**SAS 9 receives the data:** Use the LOCALE option on the Version 9 side at start up.

**Example:**

```
sas o('locale=Spanish_Spain')
```

**Previous release receives the data:** Start SAS 9 with the LOCALE option at start up.

**Example:**

```
sas o('locale=Spanish_Mexico')
```

Then use the %LS ( ) macro in SAS 9 to set up the host-to-host translation tables on the previous release after connection is established.

**Example:** Submit the following code from the Program Editor:

```
%ls (locale=Spanish_Mexico, remote=on);
```

### ***Devmaps and Keymaps for SAS/GRAPH Software***

If you are running SAS/GRAPH software and you want to display non-ASCII characters, you will need to set the appropriate devmaps and keymaps to match your current encoding. The devmap and keymap entries are located in

the SASHELP.FONTS catalog. To get the correct devmaps and keymaps for your encoding, you should use the %LSGRAPH macro. %LSGRAPH automatically sets up your environment for you by

- copying the devmap and keymap entries that match your encoding to the GFONT0.FONTS catalog.
- changing the name of the entry to the name DEFAULT so the devmaps and keymaps will be loaded for you.

The following example uses %LSGRAPH to set the correct devmap and keymap (E142) for a Polish user on the z/OS operating system:

```
libname gfont0 'your-font-library';
%lsgraph(e142);
```

The following tables—one for running NLSCOMPATMODE; the other for running NONLSCOMPATMODE—list devmaps and keymaps that match the locales on your platform when you are running in NLSCOMPATMODE or in NONNLSCOMPATMODE.

*Devmaps and Keymaps for NLSCOMPATMODE*

Locale	Devmap and Keymap Name	Locale	Devmap and Keymap Name
Arabic_Algeria	e425	Finnish_Finland	e143
Arabic_Bahrain	e425	French_Belgium	e148
Arabic_Egypt	e425	French_Canada	elat
Arabic_Jordan	e425	French_France	e147
Arabic_Kuwait	e425	French_Luxembourg	e147
Arabic_Lebanon	e425	French_Switzerland	e148
Arabic_Morocco	e425	German_Austria	e141
Arabic_Oman	e425	German_Germany	e141
Arabic_Qatar	e425	German_Liechtenstein	e141
Arabic_SaudiArabia	e425	German_Luxembourg	e141
Arabic_Tunisia	e425	German_Switzerland	e148
Arabic_UnitedArabEmirates	e425	Greek_Greece	e875
Bulgarian_Bulgaria	ecyr	Hebrew_Israel	e424
Byelorussian_Belarus	ecyr	Hungarian_Hungary	e870
Croatian_Croatia	e870	Icelandic_Iceland	elat
Czech_CzechRepublic	e870	Italian_Italy	e144
Danish_Denmark	e142	Italian_Switzerland	e148
Dutch_Belgium	elat	Latvian_Latvia	ebal
Dutch_Netherlands	elat	Lithuanian_Lithuania	ebal
English_Australia	elat	Norwegian_Norway	e142
English_Canada	elat	Polish_Poland	e870
English_HongKong	e146	Portuguese_Brazil	e275
English_India	e146	Portuguese_Portugal	elat
English_Ireland	e146	Romanian_Romania	e870
English_Jamaica	elat	Russian_Russia	ecyr
English_NewZealand	elat	Serbian_Yugoslavia	ecyr
English_Singapore	e146	Slovak_Slovakia	e870
English_SouthAfrica	elat	Slovenian_Slovenia	e870
English_UnitedKingdom	e146	Spanish_Argentina	elat
English_UnitedStates	elat	Spanish_Bolivia	elat
Estonian_Estonia	eest	Spanish_Chile	elat

<b>Locale</b>	<b>Devmap and Keymap Name</b>
Spanish_Colombia	elat
Spanish_CostaRica	elat
Spanish_DominicanRepublic	elat
Spanish_Ecuador	elat
Spanish_ElSalvador	elat
Spanish_Guatemala	elat
Spanish_Honduras	elat
Spanish_Mexico	elat
Spanish_Nicaragua	elat
Spanish_Panama	elat
Spanish_Paraguay	elat
Spanish_Peru	elat
Spanish_PuertoRico	elat
Spanish_Spain	e145
Spanish_UnitedStates	elat
Spanish_Urugay	elat
Spanish_Venezuela	elat
Swedish_Sweden	e143
Turkish_Turkey	etur
Ukrainian_Ukraine	Ecyr

*Devmaps and Keymaps for NONLSCOMPATMODE*

<b>Locale</b>	<b>Devmap and Keymap Name</b>
Arabic_Algeria	eo2a
Arabic_Bahrain	eo2a
Arabic_Egypt	eo2a
Arabic_Jordan	eo2a
Arabic_Kuwait	eo2a
Arabic_Lebanon	eo2a
Arabic_Morocco	eo2a
Arabic_Oman	eo2a
Arabic_Qatar	eo2a
Arabic_SaudiArabia	eo2a
Arabic_Tunisia	eo2a
Arabic_UnitedArabEmirates	eo2a
Bulgarian_Bulgaria	ecy
Byelorussian_Belarus	ecy
Croatian_Croatia	el2
Czech_CzechRepublic	el2
Danish_Denmark	e24
Dutch_Belgium	el1
Dutch_Netherlands	el1
English_Australia	el1
English_Canada	el1
English_HongKong	e46
English_India	e46
English_Ireland	e46
English_Jamaica	el1
English_NewZealand	el1
English_Singapore	e46
English_SouthAfrica	el1
English_UnitedKingdom	e46
English_UnitedStates	el1
Estonian_Estonia	et

<b>Locale</b>	<b>Devmap and Keymap Name</b>
Finnish_Finland	e43
French_Belgium	e48
French_Canada	el1
French_France	e47
French_Luxembourg	e47
French_Switzerland	e48
German_Austria	e41
German_Germany	e41
German_Liechtenstein	e41
German_Luxembourg	e41
German_Switzerland	e48
Greek_Greece	el
Hebrew_Israel	eiw
Hungarian_Hungary	el2
Icelandic_Iceland	el1
Italian_Italy	e44
Italian_Switzerland	e48
Latvian_Latvia	elb
Lithuanian_Lithuania	elb
Norwegian_Norway	e42
Polish_Poland	el2
Portuguese_Brazil	elb
Portuguese_Portugal	el1
Romanian_Romania	el2
Russian_Russia	ecy
Serbian_Yugoslavia	ecy
Slovak_Slovakia	el2
Slovenian_Slovenia	el2
Spanish_Argentina	el1
Spanish_Bolivia	el1
Spanish_Chile	el1

<b>Locale</b>	<b>Devmap and Keymap Name</b>
Spanish_Columbia	eo11
Spanish_CostaRica	eo11
Spanish_DominicanRepublic	eo11
Spanish_Ecuador	eo11
Spanish_ElSalvador	eo11
Spanish_Guatemala	eo11
Spanish_Honduras	eo11
Spanish_Mexico	eo11
Spanish_Nicaragua	eo11
Spanish_Panama	eo11
Spanish_Paraguay	eo11
Spanish_Peru	eo11
Spanish_PuertoRico	eo11
Spanish_Spain	eo45
Spanish_UnitedStates	eo11
Spanish_Urugay	eo11
Spanish_Venezuela	eo11
Swedish_Sweden	eo43
Turkish_Turkey	eotr
Ukrainian_Ukraine	eocy



## Chapter 3 — Installing SAS Service Packs for z/OS

This section contains instructions for installing SAS Service Pack files. Whether you are installing SAS 9.1.3 for the first time, adding an additional SAS System product, or specifically installing Service Pack files, SAS recommends that you utilize the information in this section to unload the most current maintenance for SAS 9.1.3.

Updates can be performed by using either the SAS Installation Wizard for z/OS or the traditional batch method, utilizing an Action B or an Action C (and subsequent Action D.)

### ***Installing a Service Pack or Adding a New SAS System Product with a Service Pack***

Whether you are installing the Service Pack for the first time or adding a new SAS System product, you should refer to the instructions for performing an Action B or an Action C in the *Installation Instructions for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS* to upgrade your SAS System with the recent Service Pack.

If SAS is currently installed and you have received add-on media, the Service Pack upgrade is automatically included in the installation and no additional steps are required to perform the upgrade.

If you are installing a Service Pack utilizing an Action C, new PROCS and CLISTs are generated accessing the staging library.

### ***Copying Staged Libraries to Production***

If you performed the recommended Action C above on your Service Pack-only media, you will eventually want to move these staging libraries to production. Refer to the *Installation Instructions for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS* for instructions for performing an Action D.

### ***Post-Installation Steps***

If you are upgrading your SAS System installation from an earlier level to the newer Service Pack level and you have set SAS System options by assembling the `DEFAULT OPTIONS TABLE` using the `BAOPTS1` member of your original `CNTL` data set, you must reassemble this table as follows:

1. Edit the `BAOPTS1` member in your original `CNTL` data set.
2. Change the `SYSLMOD DD` statement in all three `LINK EDIT` steps to point to the new `HLQ.library` (the new version.)
3. Rerun `BAOPTS1`.

If you are running the SAS System out of the LPA with `PGM=SASLPA`, it is necessary to refresh the LPA after completing the installation of the Service Pack.

### ***Service Pack Verification***

After the Service Pack installation completes, upon invocation of SAS, a note will be displayed in the `SASLOG` regarding the Service Pack level.



# Appendix A — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS

## Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

**Note:** This task is required.

If the ADABAS interface is used extensively at your site, and if your ADABAS system load library is not a link list library, you might want to modify the SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to allocate the necessary files by default. Alternatively, users must specify the `SASLOAD` operand shown below when invoking the CLIST and must override `STEPLIB` when running batch to concatenate the library that contains your site's Software AG load modules. In either case, they might also be required to allocate `DDCARD`, as appropriate.

**Note:** The concatenation order of the `SAS LOAD LIBRARY` and the load library for database access can be interchanged. Generally, if more database access activities will occur in the SAS session or batch job, place the database load library first in the concatenation (or ahead of the `SAS LOAD LIBRARY`). The opposite is true when SAS processing dominates the session or JOB.

- Make the following changes to the CLIST:
  - Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST:  
`SASLOAD(''&prefix.LIBRARY'')`  
with the line  
`SASLOAD(''your.ADABAS.loadlib'' ''&prefix.LIBRARY'')`
  - Optionally, add an appropriate `ALLOCATE` statement for the fileref `DDCARD`, unless appropriate parameters are included in the `ADARUN` module.
- Make the following changes to the cataloged procedure:
  - Modify the `STEPLIB DD` statement to concatenate your Software AG load library as follows:

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ADABAS.loadlib
```

- Optionally, add an appropriate `DDCARD DD` statement, unless appropriate parameters are included in the `ADARUN` module. The following example illustrates the `DDCARD` parameters required by this interface:

```
ADARUN DATABASE=001 /*site-specific value*/
ADARUN DEVICE=3380 /*site-specific value*/
ADARUN MODE=MULTI /*multi (default) or single*/
ADARUN SVC=253 /*site-specific value*/
ADARUN PROGRAM=USER /*required*/
```

## Using the NATURAL Security Interface

**Note:** This task is optional.

The modules `NSCDDM` and `NSCDDM22` unloaded to your SAS LIBRARY data set are the NATURAL Security Interface modules supplied by Software AG. If you do not have the NATURAL Security Software, or do not want to use it, delete or rename the load module `NSCDDM`.

The module `NSCDDM` is necessary for support of NATURAL Release 2.3.1 or later or ADABAS Version 6 when using the NATURAL Security Interface. If you are using NATURAL Release 2.2 and you want to use the NATURAL Security Interface, delete or rename the existing `NSCDDM` module and then rename the module `NSCDDM22` to `NSCDDM`.

## Using the Samples

**Note:** This task is optional.

Three samples for the ADABAS interface are unloaded into your `&prefix.SAMPLE` library at install time:

- `ADBD0C`, which is used to create sample data sets. These sample data sets are referenced in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS Software, Version 8 and later*.
- `ADBDTL` contains input to the ADABAS Utilities that are used to create the four ADABAS files referenced in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS Software, Version 8 and later*. You might want to create NATURAL DDMs to match these files using the NATURAL software.
- `ADBDTMT` contains line-mode statements used to create sample access and view descriptors. These access and view descriptors are referenced in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS Software, Version 8 and later*.

## SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface

**Note:** This task is optional.

To see a list of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface, invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and submit the following statements:

```
proc options group = adabas; run;
```

Appendix 1 in the *SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS Software* manual also lists SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface. You might want to review these during installation. All options have defaults.

The options applicable to this interface are all invocation options. That means you can change them when you invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation but not during a SAS session. Some system options can be overridden by using the corresponding data set options. You can supply data set options when a data set is referenced in a SAS procedure or DATA step.

You are allowed to restrict changes to invocation options by placing them in the Restricted Options Table, `SASOPTRS`. This process is described in “Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files” on page 9 of this document.

One option, `ADBDUPD=`, is suggested as a restricted option. The `ADBDUPD=` option determines whether the SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS engine can perform both read and update operations or is restricted to read-only. The default option value, `Y`, specifies that both reads and updates are allowed. The option value, `N`, specifies that the engine can only read ADABAS data; any attempt to update an ADABAS file results in an error.

**Note:** The `ADBDUPD=` option replaces the `ADBDENGMD=` option available in earlier releases.

Other options you might want to examine first are those listed in Appendix 1 of the *SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS Software, Version 8 and later*, under the heading ADABAS System Options.

## NATURAL Date and Time Support

The SAS/ACCESS Interface to ADABAS now supports NATURAL Date (D) and Time (T) datatypes. Such fields will have their data values translated into the equivalent SAS dates and times respectively.

When an access descriptor is created on a NATURAL or PREDICT DDM containing a date field, the default SAS format and informat is set to `DATE9`. As with other default formats and informats displayed with the LIST commands, this can be changed to another compatible SAS format/informat.

A NATURAL time field has a default SAS format and informat of `TIME8`. This can be changed to another SAS format/informat.

If the NATURAL time field is an extended time field, this can be interpreted as a SAS datetime value by specifying an `E` in the `DB Content` field. In this case, the default SAS format and informat is changed from `TIME8.` to `DATETIME18.` This can be changed to another compatible SAS format/informat.

While it is not possible to display these values as simple numeric values (date or time values), NATURAL date and time values are stored differently than SAS date and time values. Thus the values displayed in this manner will not be the same as if they had been displayed through a NATURAL application. It is not recommended that these values be used as other than their corresponding date or time values.

## ***Reentrancy***

Load module SASIOADB is non-reentrant because of the non-reentrant program ADAUSER provided by Software AG, which must be linked with SASIOADB in order to communicate with the ADABAS DBMS.



## Appendix B — Implementing SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB Software

### Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

**Note:** This task is required.

If the CA-DATACOM/DB interface is used extensively at your site, and your DATACOM system load library is not a link list library, you might want to modify the SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to allocate the necessary files by default. If you do not, users will be required to specify the `SASLOAD` operand shown below when invoking the CLIST, and to override `STEPLIB` when running batch to concatenate the library that contains your site's CA-provided load modules.

**Note:** The concatenation order of the `SAS LOAD LIBRARY` and the load library for database access can be interchanged. Generally, if more database access activities will occur in the SAS session or batch job, place the database load library first in the concatenation (or ahead of the `SAS LOAD LIBRARY`). The opposite is true when SAS processing dominates the session or JOB.

- Make the following change to the CLIST:

Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST:

```
SASLOAD('' &prefix.LIBRARY'')
```

with the line:

```
SASLOAD(''your.DATACOM.loadlib'' '' &prefix.LIBRARY'')
```

- Make the following change to the cataloged procedure:

Modify the `STEPLIB DD` statement to concatenate your CA-provided load module library as follows:

```
//STEPLIB      DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
//              DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY
//              DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.DATACOM.loadlib
```

### Using the Samples

**Note:** This task is optional.

Three samples for the CA-DATACOM/DB interface are unloaded into your `&prefix.SAMPLE` library at install time:

- `DDBDOC` is used to create sample data sets referred to in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB: Reference, Version 8 and later, First Edition*.
- `DDBUTL` contains input to the CA-DATADictionary Batch Utility that creates the database referred to in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB: Reference, Version 8 and later, First Edition*. `DDBUTL` creates a new CA-DATACOM/DB database with four tables.
- `DDBDESC` contains code to create the access and view descriptors to be used in recreating the examples in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB: Reference, Version 8 and later, First Edition*.

### SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface

**Note:** This task is optional.

To see a list of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface, invoke V9 SAS and submit the following statements:

```
proc options group=datacom; run;
```

You can also refer to Appendix 1 in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB: Reference, Version 8 and later, First Edition* for a list of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface. You might want to review this information during installation. All options have defaults.

The options applicable to this interface are invocation options. That means you can change them when you invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, but not during a SAS session. Some system options have corresponding data set options; these can be set during a SAS procedure or DATA Step. Refer to Appendix 2 in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-DATACOM/DB: Reference, Version 8 and later, First Edition* for information on these data set options.

One invocation option, `DDBMISS=`, specifies a value to be used for representing null values when the SAS/ACCESS Interface engine for CA-DATACOM/DB inserts or updates records in a database table. Valid values for the `DDBMISS=` option are blank (0X40) which is the default, and 0X00.

You are allowed to restrict changes to invocation options by placing them in the Restricted Options Table, `SASOPTRS`. This process is described in “Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files,” on page 9 of this document.

One option, `DDBUPD=`, is suggested as a restricted option. The `DDBUPD=` system option determines whether the SAS/ACCESS Interface for CA-DATACOM/DB engine can perform both read and update operations, or is restricted to read-only. The default option value, `Y`, specifies that both reads and updates are allowed. The option value, `N`, specifies that the engine can only read CA-DATACOM/DB tables; any attempt to update a CA-DATACOM/DB table results in an error.

# Appendix C — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface Interface to CA-IDMS

## Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

**Note:** This task is required.

If the CA-IDMS interface is used extensively at your site, and your IDMS system load library is not a link list library, you might want to modify the SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to allocate the necessary files by default. Refer to Steps 1 and 2 below for instructions on making these changes.

If you do not make the changes described in Steps 1 and 2, you are required to specify the `LOAD` operand shown below when invoking the CLIST and/or the `LOAD=` parameter when executing the cataloged procedure to concatenate the library that contains your site's CA-IDMS load modules.

If you are accessing the IDMS databases using central version, you might also be required to allocate the `SYSCTL` file. If you are accessing the IDMS databases using local mode, you might also be required to allocate the database files.

- Enter the following command under TSO to start a SAS session in which you will execute the IDMS interface:

```
SASname LOAD("your.IDMS.loadlib")
```

Where `your.IDMS.loadlib` is the IDMS system load library and the `SASname` is the name of the CLIST you use to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

- To use the IDMS interface with the SAS cataloged procedure, use the `LOAD=` parameter of the PROC to specify your site's load library. For example, you can use the following code in your JCL:

```
//SASIDM EXEC SASname,LOAD='your.IDMS.loadlib'
```

**Note:** The name the user supplies must consist of all capital letters.

### Step 1: Update your SAS CLIST (optional)

If the IDMS interface is used extensively at your site, you might want to alter the CLIST so that your IDMS load library is allocated and concatenated before the SAS load library in the `TASKLIB` symbol. Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST (where `SASLOAD` is the replacement parameter in the CLIST).

- Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST:

```
SASLOAD("&prefix.LIBRARY")
```

with the line:

```
SASLOAD("your.IDMS.loadlib " &prefix.LIBRARY")
```

- Add an appropriate `ALLOCATE` statement for the fileref `SYSCTL`, if you are accessing your IDMS databases using central version. Add the appropriate `ALLOCATE` statements for the IDMS databases and dictionary you have the authority to access, if you are accessing your IDMS databases using local mode.

### Step 2: Update your SAS cataloged procedure (optional)

- If the IDMS interface is used extensively at your site with the SAS cataloged procedure, you might want to make the `STEPLIB DD` statement change permanent to your cataloged procedure. To always execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using the IDMS interface, modify the `STEPLIB DD` statement in your cataloged procedure to reflect the following lines:

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR, DSN=&LOAD  
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY  
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=your.IDMS.loadlib
```

- Add the appropriate DD statements for the fileref SYSCTL, if you are accessing your IDMS databases using central version.
- Add the appropriate DD statements for the IDMS databases and dictionary you have authority to access, if you are accessing your IDMS databases using local mode.

## **SAS/ACCESS DATA Step Interface Enhancement**

The DATA step component of the SAS/ACCESS Interface to CA-IDMS is the only component available with this release. This component allows you to directly access network data using special SAS system extensions for the standard SAS INFILE statement, along with DATA step programming statements. The INFILE statement extensions, along with the DATA step programming statements, allow you to generate DML calls to the database.

## Appendix D — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to DB2

### Defining the Interface to DB2 and DB2 Users

**Note:** This task is required.

The DB2 database administrator at your site must perform the following steps.

Even if you installed and implemented any previous release of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, and SAS/ACCESS Interface to DB2, and completed the `BIND` and `GRANT` steps at that time, you will need to repeat them for this installation.

#### **STEP 1: Bind the DBRMs into an application plan (required).**

You can bind the application plan by using the `BIND` option from the DB2I panels under ISPF. Alternatively, you can issue the `BIND` command from TSO through the DSN command processor running in either foreground or background. A new plan will be created. If a plan with this name already exists on your system, it will be replaced.

- The syntax of the `BIND` command is:

```
BIND PLAN(SAS91) ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS)
DEGREE(ANY) VALIDATE(RUN) RELEASE(COMMIT) ACQUIRE(USE)
KEEPDYNAMIC(NO) NODEFER(PREPARE) NOREOPT(VAR)
CURRENTDATA(YES) SQLRULES(DB2) DISCONNECT(EXPLICIT)
PKLIST(*.COLLID.SAS91, DB2V7R1.DSNUTILS.*)
```

- If you plan to use DRDA support, you must regenerate plan SAS91 to include the following:

**Bind packages for each server you plan to access**

**Bind for the plan which must include all bind packages**

Some statements in this plan that will use a DB2 stored procedure (to invoke the `LOAD UTILITY`), which do not exist on other DBMSs, or in earlier releases of DB2. If you encounter errors regarding unknown SQL statements when binding a package against a particular server, you might want to use the `SQLERROR(CONTINUE)` option to allow the package to be bound without those statements. These statements are not required, since the optional `LOAD UTILITY` will not exist on that DBMS. See the `BIND PACKAGE` statement below for DB2VM as an example.

For some DBMS's, `SQLERROR(CONTINUE)` will still not allow the DBRM to bind. For these DBMS's, there is a second DBRM that can be used which does not include any DB2 z/OS specific SQL statements. This DBRM can be used for the `BIND PACKAGE` on those DBMSs. The name of this DBRM is `SAS91X`. In order to use this DBRM in the `BIND PACKAGE`, its name must be changed to `SAS91`. You can place this DBRM in a different `dbrmlib` than the 'real' `SAS91` DBRM, and specify this `dbrmlib` on the `BIND PACKAGE` statements for those DBMS's. This way you can run all of the `BINDs` at one time. Alternately, you can temporarily rename the two DBRMs and run the `BIND PACKAGE` statements individually for the DBMSs that require this DBRM, then `BIND` the `PLAN` for all of the packages. See the `BIND PACKAGE` statement below for DB2AIX as an example.

- The syntax for binding packages and the plan is as follows:

**Note:** *These are the suggested option values that have been run and tested. Other values can cause different behaviors. Please consult the DB2 manuals for more information about bind options.*

```
BIND PACKAGE(DB2V7R1.COLLID) OWNER(USERID) QUALIFIER(USERID) MEMBER(SAS91)
ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS)
DEGREE(ANY) VALIDATE(RUN) RELEASE(COMMIT) KEEP_DYNAMIC(NO) NODEFER(PREPARE)
NOREOPT(VAR) CURRENTDATA(YES) SQLERROR(NOPACKAGE)
LIBRARY('DB2V7R1.DBRM.DATA')
```

```
BIND PACKAGE(DB2V6R1.COLLID) OWNER(USERID) QUALIFIER(USERID) MEMBER(SAS91)
ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS)
DEGREE(ANY) VALIDATE(RUN) RELEASE(COMMIT) KEEP_DYNAMIC(NO) NODEFER(PREPARE)
NOREOPT(VAR) CURRENTDATA(YES) SQLERROR(NOPACKAGE)
LIBRARY('DB2V7R1.DBRM.DATA')
```

```
BIND PACKAGE(DB2VM.COLLID) OWNER(USERID) QUALIFIER(USERID) MEMBER(SAS91)
ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS) DEGREE(ANY)
VALIDATE(RUN) RELEASE(COMMIT)
CURRENTDATA(YES) SQLERROR(CONTINUE)
LIBRARY('DB2V7R1.DBRM.DATA')
```

```
BIND PACKAGE(DB2AIX.COLLID) OWNER(USERID) QUALIFIER(USERID) MEMBER(SAS91)
ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS) DEGREE(ANY)
VALIDATE(BIND) RELEASE(COMMIT) LIBRARY('DB2V7R1.DBRM.SAS91X.DATA')
```

```
BIND PLAN(SAS91) ACTION(REPLACE) ISOLATION(CS) DEGREE(ANY)
VALIDATE(RUN) RELEASE(COMMIT) ACQUIRE(USE) KEEP_DYNAMIC(NO) NODEFER(PREPARE)
NOREOPT(VAR) CURRENTDATA(YES) SQLRULES(DB2) DISCONNECT(EXPLICIT)
PKLIST(*.COLLID.SAS91, DB2V7R1.DSNUTILS.*)
```

## STEP 2: Grant EXECUTE authority to users (required).

Grant EXECUTE authority for the plan created by the BIND command to all users of the plan or to PUBLIC for general use. Issue the GRANT command as follows:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON PLAN SAS91 TO userid
```

## Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

**Note:** *This task is required.*

If the DB2 interface is used extensively at your site, and if your DB2 system load library is not a link list library, you might want to modify the SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to allocate your DB2 system load library by default. See Steps 1 and 2, which follow, for the changes to make.

If you do not make the changes described in Steps 1 and 2, users must specify the LOAD operand shown in the following example when invoking the CLIST. The user must also specify the LOAD= parameter when executing the cataloged procedure to concatenate your DB2 system load library.

**Note:** *The concatenation order of the SAS LOAD LIBRARY and the load library for database access can be interchanged. Generally, if more database access activities will occur in the SAS session or*

*batch job, place the database load library first in the concatenation (or ahead of the SAS LOAD LIBRARY). The opposite is true when SAS processing dominates the session or JOB.*

- Enter the following command under TSO to start a SAS session in which you will execute the DB2 interface:

```
SASname LOAD(''your.db2.loadlib'')
```

where `your.db2.loadlib` is the DB2 system load library and `SASname` is the name of the CLIST you use to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

- To use the DB2 interface with the SAS cataloged procedure, use the `LOAD=` parameter of the PROC to specify your site's DB2 load library. For example, you can use the following code in your JCL:

```
//SASDB2      EXEC SASname,LOAD='your.DB2.loadlib'
```

### STEP 1: Update your SAS CLIST (optional).

If the DB2 interface is used extensively at your site, you might want to alter the CLIST so that your DB2 load library is allocated and concatenated before the SAS load library in the `TASKLIB` symbol. Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST (where `SASLOAD` is a replacement parameter in the CLIST):

```
SASLOAD("&prefix.LIBRARY")+
```

with this line:

```
SASLOAD(''your.db2.loadlib'' '&prefix.LIBRARY'') +
```

### STEP 2: Update your SAS cataloged procedure (optional).

If the DB2 interface is used extensively at your site with the SAS cataloged procedure, you might want to permanently change the `STEPLIB DD` statement in your cataloged procedure. To always execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using the DB2 interface, modify the `STEPLIB DD` statement in your cataloged procedure to reflect the following lines.

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.db2.loadlib
```

where `&prefix.LIBRARY` is SAS 9.1.3 Foundation load library and `your.db2.loadlib` is the DB2 System load library.

## Creating and Loading the Sample Tables

**Note:** This task is optional.

Refer to *SAS/ACCESS 9.1.3 for Relational Databases: Reference (DB2® under z/OS Chapter)* for a number of coding examples based on sample DB2 tables that can be created at your site. Creating these tables will assist the users at your site in learning how to use the SAS/ACCESS Interface to DB2 product.

The program to create these sample tables is in the `SAMPLE` library member `ACCDATA`. The program to run the SAS code using the sample tables is in the `SAMPLE` library member, `ACCRUN`. Before running the `ACCDATA` job, you must first edit the autoexec file called `ACCAUTO`, also found in the `SAMPLE` library, to assign two libname statements, one for a SAS library and one for a SAS library of DB2 tables. To execute this program, use the JCL as described in "Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure" on page 74, adding the following to allocate the autoexec file:

```
//SASEXEC DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCAUTO)
```

Then you can assign the `SYSIN DD` card referring first to the `ACCDATA` member in the `SAMPLE` library as follows:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCDATA)
```

Submit the JCL to run the ACCDATA job; once it completes, you can edit the SYSIN DD statement:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCRUN)
```

and run the ACCRUN job to make use of the Sample tables.

**Note:** Some customization of this job will be required.

## SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface

**Note:** This task is optional.

To see a list of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface, invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation and submit the following statements:

```
proc options group = db2; run;
```

Alternatively, you can refer to online help for the current information. You might want to review these system options during installation. All options have defaults.

Most of the options applicable to this interface are invocation options. That means you can change them when you invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, but not during a SAS session. Some system options have corresponding data set options; these can be set during a SAS procedure or DATA step.

Other system options such as DB2SSID= can be set at invocation time or within a SAS session. You are allowed to restrict changes to invocation options by placing them in the Restricted Options Table. This process is described in “Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files,” on page 9 of this document.

One option, DB2UPD=, is suggested as a restricted option. The DB2UPD= option determines if, in certain circumstances, the SAS/ACCESS Interface for DB2 engine can perform both read and update operations, or is restricted to read-only. The default option value, Y, specifies that both reads and updates are allowed. The option value, N, specifies that the engine can only read DB2 data; users who are using access views or libname engine and attempt to update a DB2 file will receive an error message.

**Note:** Even with the DB2UPD= set to N, DB2 Tables can be updated by users with PROC SQL Pass-Through Facility, PROC DBLOAD and the Version 5 Compatibility procs.

## Special Consideration for Using the RRS Attachment Facility.

The V9 DB2 Access Product supports both RRSF and CAF as the attachment facility. For usage details, please see the sections “SAS 9.1.3 Options and Settings for DB2” and “Information for the Database Administrator” in “DB2 under z/OS Chapter, First Edition” of “Part 5, SAS/ACCESS Software: DBMS-Specific Information” in the OnlineDoc *SAS/ACCESS Software for Relational Databases: Reference*.

There are three installation requirements that must be met before RRSF can be used as the attachment facility:

The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine must be installed, and must be at Level 7 or greater. See “Installing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine” on page 36 for details on the SAS SVC.

**Note:** The SVC routine shipped with V9 SAS is Level 8.

The load module named DSNRLI is part DB2 and should be found in DB2’s SDSNLOAD load library. DSNRLI must be in an APF authorized load library that is included in the LINKLIST.

The load module named SASD2RUB is part of the SAS DB2 Access Product and should be found in your SAS load library. SASD2RUB must be in an APF authorized load library, which is recommended to be included in the LINKLIST.

With these requirements met, the full functionality of the RRSAF will be supported.

**Note:** *If these requirements are not met, RRSAF can still be used by a non-server SAS 9.1.3 session, but the Authorized Signon support will not work. Since Authorized Signon support is the main reason for having SAS 9.1.3 use this facility, these requirements are not considered optional.*



# Appendix E — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS-DL/I

## Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

**Note:** This task is required.

If the IMS interface is used extensively at your site, you might want to alter the CLIST and cataloged procedure so that your IMS libraries are allocated and concatenated.

**Note:** The concatenation order of the SAS LOAD LIBRARY and the load library for database access can be interchanged. Generally, if more database access activities will occur in the SAS session or batch job, place the database load library first in the concatenation (or ahead of the SAS LOAD LIBRARY). The opposite is true when SAS processing dominates the session or JOB.

### STEP 1: Determine the IMS library data set names and identify the IMS libraries you need to allocate at your site.

In order to access your IMS databases, you need to add allocations for the following IMS data sets to your SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure:

- DFSRESLB
- DFSVSAMP (only required for VSAM and OSAM access methods, as defined in the DBD)
- IEFORDER
- IMS
- DD statements for your IMS databases if using DLI or DBB region.

Depending on how your site runs IMS, you might also want to add allocations for these additional data sets:

- IMSACB
- IMSERR
- RECON1
- RECON2.

### STEP 2: Add allocations to your SAS CLIST, specifying your IMS library data set names as determined in STEP 1.

- Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST (where SASLOAD is a replacement parameter in the CLIST) so that your IMS RESLIB is concatenated before the SAS Load library in the TASKLIB symbol.

Replace the following:

```
SASLOAD("&prefix.LIBRARY")
```

with the following:

```
SASLOAD("your.ims.reslib" "&prefix.LIBRARY")
```

- Add the following parameter at the top of the default CLIST to allow optional user input of the IMS LOG IEFORDER data set name:

```
/* -----Allow IMS LOG DSN input ----- */ +  
IMSLOG(NULLFILE) /* IMS LOG DSN */ +
```

Add lines like the following in the default SAS CLIST to allocate required IMS libraries:

```
ALLOC F(DFSRESLB) DA('your.ims.reslib') SHR REU  
ALLOC F(IMS) DA('your.ims.psbllib' 'your.ims.dbdlib') SHR REU  
IF &STR(IMSLOG) NE THEN ALLOC F(IEFORDER) DA('&IMSLOG.') OLD  
ALLOC F(DFSVSAMP) DA('your.parmlib(DFSVSAMP)') SHR REU  
ALLOC F(database) DA('your.ims.database') OLD
```

**Note:** You only need to allocate your database data sets with disposition *OLD* if you will be writing to them with the SAS/ACCESS software. Data base data set allocations are not required for a region type of *BMP*.

- If needed, add lines like the following immediately after the statements you added for required IMS libraries:

```
ALLOC F(IMSACB) DA('your.ims.acbllib') SHR REU
ALLOC F(RECON1) DA('your.recon1') SHR REU
ALLOC F(RECON2) DA('your.recon2') SHR REU
ALLOC F(IMSERR) DA('your.dump.data set') SHR REU
```

**STEP 3: Add allocations to your SAS cataloged procedure, specifying your IMS library data set names as determined in STEP 1.**

Concatenate your `IMS RESLIB` to your `STEPLIB` statement in your default SAS cataloged procedure as follows:

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ims.reslib
```

where `&prefix.LIBRARY` is SAS 9.1.3 Foundation load library and `your.ims.reslib` is the `IMS RESLIB` library.

Add lines like the following in your default SAS cataloged procedure. If you want to use the IMS LOG facility, be sure to include appropriate `DD` specifications for your site in the `IEFRDER DD` statement.

```
//DFSRESLB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ims.reslib
//IMS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ims.psbllib
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ims.dbdlib
//IEFRDER DD DSN=NULLFILE,DISP=(,KEEP),
// UNIT=(TAPE,,DEFER),VOLSER=xxxxxx,
// DCB=(RECFM=VB,BLKSIZE=1920,LRECL=1916,BUFNO=2)
//database DD DISP=OLD,DSN=your.ims.database
```

**Note:** You only need to allocate your database data sets with disposition *OLD* if you will be writing to them with the SAS/ACCESS software. Database data set allocations are not required for a region type of *BMP*.

If needed at your site, also add lines like the following in your default SAS cataloged procedure:

```
//IMSACB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ims.acbllib
//RECON1 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.recon1
//RECON2 DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.recon2
//IMSERR DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.dump.dataset
```

## Verifying Installation of the SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS

**Note:** This task is required.

**STEP 1: Set up JCL to invoke the standard SAS cataloged procedure at your site.**

The additional allocations described in the preceding STEP 3 are not required because TESTIMS does not attach to the IMS DBMS.

Before executing the TESTIMS verification job, you must edit either the LIBNAME or CREATE statement contained in that member of your &prefix.TESTS PDS. You must either supply a valid permanent SAS data library name in place of 'your.sas.library' in the LIBNAME statement, or you might choose to delete the LIBNAME statement and write the test access descriptor to the WORK library by changing the libref in the CREATE statement from 'mylib' to 'work'.

Include a SYSIN DD statement like the following to run the installation verification program for this product:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.TESTS(TESTIMS)
```

## **STEP 2: Submit the job and verify the results.**

This job should complete with return code 0.

When this job completes successfully, you have verified the ability to create descriptors in SAS/ACCESS. Since this job does not attach to the DBMS, it does not test the actual interface.

## **SAS 9.1.3 Foundation Options for this Interface**

**Note:** This task is required.

To see a list of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface, invoke V9 SAS and submit the following statements:

```
proc options group=ims; run;
```

You can also refer to Appendix 1 in *SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS-DL/I Software, Version 8 and later, First Edition* for a list of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options for this interface. You might want to review the default option settings during installation, as they determine whether the interface can attach successfully to the IMS DBMS.

The BMPREAD=, DLIREAD=, IMSBPUPD=, IMSDLUPD=, IMSID=, IMSREGTP=, and IMSWHST= options for this interface are invocation options. That means you can change them when you invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, but not during a SAS session. All other options are classified as session options.

You are allowed to restrict changes to invocation options by placing them in the Restricted Options Table. This process is described in “Customizing Default Options and System Configuration Files” on page 9 of this document.

BMPREAD=, DLIREAD=, IMSBPUPD=, and IMSDLUPD= are suggested as restricted options. The BMPREAD= and DLIREAD= options determine whether the SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS DATA step can perform both read and update operations, or is restricted to read-only. The default value, N, allows update processing. The option value, Y, causes SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to return a status code of SE and set \_ERROR\_=1 if a DL/I update call is issued. The IMSBPUPD= and IMSDLUPD= options determine whether the SAS/ACCESS Interface for IMS engine can perform both read and update operations, or is restricted to read-only. The default option value, Y, specifies that both reads and updates are allowed. The option value, N, specifies that the engine can only read IMS data; any attempt to update an IMS file results in an error. For more information about these options, refer to *SAS/ACCESS Interface to IMS-DL/I Software, Version 8 and later*.



## Appendix F — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Oracle

### *Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure (required)*

If the Oracle interface is used extensively at your site, and if your Oracle system load library is not a link list library, you might want to modify the SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to allocate your Oracle system load library by default. See Steps 1 and 2 below for the changes to make.

If you do not make the changes described in Steps 1 and 2, users must specify the `LOAD` operand shown below when invoking the CLIST and the `LOAD=` parameter when executing the cataloged procedure to concatenate your Oracle system load library.

- Enter the following command under TSO to start a SAS session in which you will execute the Oracle interface:

```
SASname LOAD("your.ORACLE.cmdload")
```

where `your.ORACLE.cmdload` is the Oracle system load library and `SASname` is the name of the CLIST you use to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

To use the Oracle interface with the SAS cataloged procedure, use the `LOAD=` parameter of the `PROC` to specify your site's load library. For example, you can use the following code in your JCL:

```
//SASORA EXEC SASname,LOAD='your.ORACLE.cmdload'
```

- If you are running SQL\*Net Version 2 or above and you will be accessing the Oracle server as an z/OS client, you might also need to allocate the TNSNAMES file to your current SAS session. Check with your DBA to see if the TNSNAMES file is centrally maintained. If it is not, get the correct data set name for your site's TNSNAMES file.

If you do not have the TNSNAMES file allocated, you will receive the following error from Oracle:

ORACLE connection error: ORA-12154 TNSNAMES: could not resolve service name.

- Optionally, you might want to allocate the data set that contains the default pathname for connecting to the Oracle database server. This is especially convenient if you are always connecting to the same server. Check with your DBA for the correct `DDname` to the data set name.

#### **STEP 1: Update your SAS CLIST (Optional)**

If the Oracle interface is used extensively at your site, you might want to alter the CLIST so that your Oracle load library is allocated and concatenated before the SAS load library in the `TASKLIB` symbol. Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST (where `SASLOAD` is a replacement parameter in the CLIST):

```
SASLOAD('' &prefix.LIBRARY'' ) +
```

with this line:

```
SASLOAD('' your.ORACLE.cmdload'' '' &prefix.LIBRARY'' ) +
```

If you are running SQL\*Net Version 2 or above and you will be accessing the Oracle server as an z/OS client, you might also need to allocate the TNSNAMES file to your current SAS session. Check with your DBA to see if the TNSNAMES file is centrally maintained. If it is not, get the correct data set name for your site's TNSNAMES file:

```
ALLOC F(TNSNAMES) DA('Your.TNSNAMES.dataset') SHR
```

If you do not have the TNSNAMES file allocated, you will receive the following error from Oracle:

ORACLE connection error: ORA-12154: TNSNAMES: could not resolve service name.

Optionally, you might want to allocate the data set that contains the default pathname for connecting to the Oracle database server. This is especially convenient if you are always connecting to the same server. Check with your DBA for the correct DDname to the data set name.

```
ALLOC F(Your site's DDname) DA('Your.data.setname') SHR
```

## STEP 2: Update your SAS cataloged procedure (optional)

If the Oracle interface is used extensively at your site with the SAS cataloged procedure, you might want to make the STEPLIB DD statement change permanent to your cataloged procedure. To always execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using the Oracle interface, modify the STEPLIB DD statement in your cataloged procedure to reflect the following lines.

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ORACLE.cmdload
```

where &prefix.LIBRARY is SAS 9.1.3 Foundation load library and your.ORACLE.cmdload is the Oracle System load library.

If you are running SQL\*Net Version 2 or above and you will be accessing the Oracle server as a z/OS client, you might also need to allocate the TNSNAMES file to your current SAS session. Check with your DBA to see if the TNSNAMES file is centrally maintained. If it is not, get the correct data set name for your site's TNSNAMES file.

```
//TNSNAMES DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.TNSNAMES.dataset
```

If you do not have the TNSNAMES file allocated, you will receive the following error from Oracle:

```
ORACLE connection error: ORA-12154: TNSNAMES:could not resolve service name.
```

Optionally, you might want to allocate the data set that contains the default pathname for connecting to the Oracle database server. This is especially convenient if you are always connecting to the same server. Check with your DBA for the correct DDname to the data set name.

```
//yourDDname DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.dataset.name
```

## Creating and Loading the Sample Tables (optional)

Refer to *SAS/ACCESS 9.1.3 for Relational Databases: Reference*, (*SAS/ACCESS Software: Appendices, Sample Data*) for coding examples based on sample Oracle tables that can be created at your site. Creating these tables will assist the users at your site in learning how to use the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Oracle product.

The program to create these sample tables is in the SAMPLE library member ACCDATA. The program to run the SAS code using the sample tables is in the SAMPLE library member, ACCRUN. Before running the ACCDATA job, you must first edit the autoexec file called ACCAUTO, also found in the SAMPLE library, to assign two libname statements, one for a SAS library and one for a SAS library of Oracle tables. To execute this program, use the JCL as described in "Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure (required)" on page 83, adding the following to allocate the autoexec file:

```
//SASEXEC DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCAUTO)
```

Then you can assign the SYSIN DD card referring first to the ACCDATA member in the SAMPLE library as follows:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCDATA)
```

Submit the JCL to run the ACCDATA job; once it completes, you can edit the SYSIN DD statement:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE (ACCRUN)
```

and run the ACCRUN job to make use of the Sample tables.

**Note:** *Some customization of this job will be required.*



## Appendix G — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to R/3

SAS/ACCESS Interface to R/3 software requires extensive installation setup before it can be used. Refer to the *Installation Instructions for SAS/ACCESS 4.2 Interface to R/3 Software on SAS 9.1.3* included in your SAS order for detailed installation instructions and configuration information.



## Appendix H — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to SYSTEM 2000

### *Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure*

**Note:** This task is required.

If the SYSTEM 2000 Interface is used extensively at your site, and if your SYSTEM 2000 load library is not a link list library, you might want to modify the SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure to allocate your SYSTEM 2000 load library by default. The file S2KCOM is required for SYSTEM 2000 Multi-User, the file S2KPARMS is required for SYSTEM 2000 single-user, and the file S2KDEFC is required for both Multi-User and single-user. These must also be allocated to your CLIST and procedure. See Steps 1 and 2 below for the changes to make.

**Note:** The concatenation order of the SAS LOAD LIBRARY and the load library for database access can be interchanged. Generally, if more database access activities will occur in the SAS session or batch job, place the database load library first in the concatenation (or ahead of the SAS LOAD LIBRARY). The opposite is true when SAS processing dominates the session or JOB.

#### **STEP 1: Add allocations to your SAS CLIST (Optional)**

Replace the following line in the installation-supplied CLIST (where SASLOAD is a replacement parameter in the CLIST):

```
SASLOAD('' '&prefix.LIBRARY'' ')+
```

with this line:

```
SASLOAD('' 'your.SYSTEM2000.load'' ' '&prefix.LIBRARY'' ')+
```

In addition, you need to allocate three SYSTEM 2000 specific files in your SAS CLIST by adding the following:

```
/* Allocate SYSTEM 2000 file for DBLOAD
ALLOC F(S2KDEFC) SP(1 1) CYL +
    LRECL(100) BLKSIZE(100) RECFM(F) REU

/* Allocate SYSTEM 2000 Multi-User specific file
ALLOC F(S2KCOM) DA('your.SYSTEM2000.s2kcom.file') SHR REU

/* Allocate SYSTEM 2000 single-user specific file
ALLOC F(S2KPARMS) DA('your.SYSTEM2000.CNTL(NLPARM)') SHR REU
```

## STEP 2: Add allocations to your SAS cataloged procedure (optional)

Concatenate your **SYSTEM 2000 LOAD** library to your **STEPLIB** statement in your default SAS cataloged procedure as follows:

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD  
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY  
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.SYSTEM2000.load
```

Allocate the following **SYSTEM 2000 Multi-User** file in your SAS procedure for Multi-User access:

```
//S2KCOM DD DSN=your.SYSTEM2000.s2kcom.file,DISP=SHR
```

Allocate the following **SYSTEM 2000 single-user specific** file in your SAS procedure for single-user access:

```
//S2KPARMS DD,DSN=your.SYSTEM2000.CNTL(NLPARM),DISP=SHR
```

Allocate the following **SYSTEM 2000** file in your SAS procedure for both Multi-User and single-user access:

```
//S2KDEFC DD UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),  
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=100,BLKSIZE=100)
```

With all three **S2KCOM**, **S2KDEFC**, and **S2KPARMS** files present, your SAS procedure can access both Multi-User and single-user **SYSTEM 2000**.

# Appendix I — Implementing the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata

## Defining the Interface to Teradata

Teradata CLIV2 and TDP software for z/OS must be installed before using SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata. The procedure to install this software is described in the *Teradata® Tools and Utilities Installation Guide for MVS* supplied by NCR. Once the Teradata software is installed, connectivity to the Teradata RDBMS must be verified. Connectivity can be tested with SAS/ACCESS, or with BTEQ, FastLoad, or other Teradata utilities on z/OS. If you are already running any Teradata utility, then no setup is necessary —your Teradata software is already correctly configured for use by SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata.

Along with the customer's installation of Teradata client software, the system administrator must have started and initialized the Teradata Director Program (TDP). This communication task must be running before the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata product can communicate with the Teradata server. Names of the TDPs must be communicated to the SAS user community if a default TDP (see below) is not established.

**Note:** *A typical installation might include two TDPs; one named "TDPO - production TDP" and another "TDP1 - test TDP." The test TDP could be used for the testing of new versions of Teradata, new applications, etc. The production TDP's role would be to communicate with the production database server.*

The system administrator can set up a default TDP to be used by Teradata client applications, including SAS sessions. To do this, the System Parameter Block (HSISPB and HSHSPB) must be modified to indicate the default name.

**Note:** *This is a Teradata parameter block and not a SAS parameter block.*

Once the default TDP is defined, then SAS will use this TDP by default when connecting to the Teradata server.

## Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure

After the Teradata components are in place, tested and defined, the system administrator needs to configure SAS 9.1.3 Foundation to use the Teradata load libraries. SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata under z/OS uses the APPLOAD load library supplied by Teradata. This library must be accessible to SAS 9.1.3 Foundation in order for SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata to function. There are several methods that can be used to accomplish this task:

- Enter the following command under TSO to start a SAS session in which you will execute the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata under z/OS interface:

```
SASname LOAD(''your.ncr.appload'')
```

where `your.ncr.appload` is the Teradata system load library and `SASname` is the name of the CLIST you use to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

- To use the Teradata interface with the SAS cataloged procedure, use the `LOAD=` parameter of the PROC to specify your site's Teradata load libraries. For example, you can use the following code in your JCL:

```
//SASTRA EXEC SASname,LOAD='your.ncr.appload'
```

where `your.ncr.appload` is the Teradata system load library and `SASname` is the name of the cataloged procedure you use to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.

- You can modify your SAS CLIST to make the necessary Teradata libraries accessible when you invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Follow these steps to do this:
  1. Edit your SAS CLIST.

2. Replace SASLOAD(''&prefix.LIBRARY'')+ with this line:  
 SASLOAD(''your.ncr.applload'' ''&prefix.LIBRARY'')+
- You can modify your SAS cataloged procedure by changing the STEPLIB DD statement as shown below.

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&LOAD
//
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.LIBRARY
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.ncr.applload
```

## Creating and Loading the Sample Tables (optional)

Refer to *SAS/ACCESS 9.1.3 for Relational Databases: Reference, (SAS/ACCESS Software: Appendices, Sample Data)* for coding examples based on sample Teradata tables that can be created at your site. Creating these tables will assist the users at your site in learning how to use the SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata product.

The program to create these sample tables is in the SAMPLE library member ACCDATA. The program to run the SAS code using the sample tables is in the SAMPLE library member, ACCRUN. Before running the ACCDATA job, you must first edit the autoexec file called ACCAUTO, also found in the SAMPLE library, to assign two libname statements, one for a SAS library and one for a SAS library of Teradata tables. To execute this program, use the JCL as described in "Customizing the SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure" on page 91, adding the following to allocate the autoexec file:

```
//SASEXEC DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCAUTO)
```

Then you can assign the SYSIN DD card referring first to the ACCDATA member in the SAMPLE library as follows:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCDATA)
```

Submit the JCL to run the ACCDATA job; once it completes, you can edit the SYSIN DD statement:

```
//SYSIN DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.SAMPLE(ACCRUN)
```

and run the ACCRUN job to make use of the Sample tables.

**Note:** Some customization of this job will be required.

## Configuration for FastExporting (optional)

For optimal reads of large tables, SAS/ACCESS can perform FastExporting. To perform FastExporting, the Teradata FastExport Utility must be present on the system where you install SAS. The FastExport Utility is not required; SAS/ACCESS reads large tables quite efficiently without it. For further information, see the DBSLICEPARM option in your SAS/ACCESS Interface to Teradata documentation. Contact NCR if you want to obtain the Teradata FastExport Utility.

## Appendix J — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/ASSIST Software

This appendix describes how to add an optional master profile to SAS/ASSIST software. You can use a master profile to override the default settings as sent by SAS. This allows you to provide a customized setup for SAS/ASSIST software. With the master profile you can control the profile options of all SAS/ASSIST users from one central place. For more information on the profile options, refer to *SAS/ASSIST Software: Changes and Enhancements*.

### Adding a Master Profile

Complete the following steps to add a master profile to SAS/ASSIST software:

1. Specify the location of the master profile by creating a new SAS library that all users of SAS/ASSIST Software will have read-access to. The following definitions are needed:

```
Data Set Name  prefix.ASSIST.MASTER
Space units    CYLINDER
Primary quantity 1
Secondary quantity 1
Directory blocks 0
Record format   FS
Record length   6144
Block size      6144
```

Example: `prefix.ASSIST.MASTER`

All users with write-access to this library will automatically also have write-access to the master profile in SAS/ASSIST software. Select a name that conforms to the naming conventions at your installation. The name of this new library must be stored in an entry in the SASHELP library. This requires that you have write access to the SASHELP library.

- ☐ Modify the CLIST provided with installation to change the disposition of the SASHELP library to OLD.
- ☐ Invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Only one user at a time will be able to run SAS using the modified CLIST.
- ☐ On line 1 of the Program Editor type the physical pathname to be used as the SAS data library to store the master profile. Execute the `Save` command to save the entry as shown in the following example:

```
SAVE SASHELP.QASSIST.PARMS.SOURCE
00001 prefix.ASSIST.MASTER
00002
```

**Note:** *The entry must be saved with the name SASHELP.QASSIST.PARMS.SOURCE.*

The location of the master profile is now known by SAS/ASSIST software.

- ☐ Exit SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.
- ☐ Free the SASHELP data set to release the exclusive lock:  
`FREE DS(' &prefix.SASHELP')`

- ❑ Modify the CLIST provided with installation to change the disposition of the SASHELP library back to SHR. Now other users are able to run SAS concurrently.

2. Create the master profile.

The first time SAS/ASSIST software is started a master profile is created if the SASHELP.QASSIST.PARMS.SOURCE contains the name of an existing library, and the person who starts SAS/ASSIST software has write-access to this library.

3. Customize the master profile by starting SAS/ASSIST and typing the command ASSIST on the SAS command line. Then select

Setup ... Profiles ... Master/group ...

If you have write-access to the SAS data library containing the master profile you can specify default values for your installation. These values will be used by new users as they start SAS/ASSIST software.

**Note:** *If you restrict values by typing R in Status, users will not be allowed to change the values you define.*

You can run SAS/ASSIST software in two different styles – workplace or block menu. The block menu can be new style or old style. You can control this using the profile options below.

Run workplace:

SAS/Assist style: Workplace

Run new style with block menu:

SAS/Assist style: Block Menu

Menu style: New

Run old style:

SAS/Assist style: Block Menu

Menu Style: Old

4. Create Group profiles.

From the master profile it is possible to create group profiles to allow groups of users to have different setups. The master profile controls group profiles and user profiles when a user is not a member of any group. All users are indirectly controlled by the master profile when option values are set to a restricted ( R ) status.

From Setup ... Profile ... Master/Group ... select Tools ... Create Group Profile. To add users to a group profile, select Tools ... Update User Group. By default, the user ID is found in the macro variable &SYSJOBID. The value is set in the option Userid in the master profile (option type System Administration). Change the value if your site uses another variable to keep the user ID.

## Installing Sample DB2 Tables and a Sample Query Manager

This section describes how to customize SAS/ASSIST software to run queries against DB2 sample data. It is recommended that you do this in order to get acquainted with the software before you start working with your own DB2 data. This example sets up a personal query manager. See Chapter 9, “Setting Up Query Managers,” in *SAS/ASSIST Software: Changes and Enhancements* for more information.

Complete the following steps:

1. Create DB2 Sample Tables.

Query and Reporting contains its own sample DB2 tables. These tables are used in the documentation and in the SAS training courses. Complete the following steps to create DB2 sample tables:

- a. Invoke SAS and enter the following on the command line in the Program Editor:  
COPY SASHELP.QASSIST.SAMPLTAB.SOURCE
  - b. Specify the DB2 subsystem id, creator, and database name (lines 54-59):  
See documentation in the program for further information.
  - c. Execute this SAS program and the DB2 sample data will be created.
2. Create Query Manager Tables on the DB2 Sample Data

Complete the following steps to create query manager tables for installation verification purposes:

- a. In the Program Editor, use the `COPY` command to copy the sample source from `SASHELP.QASSIST.DB2METAU.SOURCE`. This program will generate a set of Query Manager tables, which contain information on DB2 tables available to specific creators.
- b. Specify the creators you want to use in line 21 as shown in the following example:

```
%let creators=('SASQR','DSN9030',USER);
```

**Note:** In this example `SASQR` and `DSN9030` are two specific creators which contain sample data from SAS and IBM. Add `USER` if you want access to a DB2 table, which has a creator equal to your user ID.

- c. Specify the location of the Query Manager tables on line 25.

```
%let saslib=SASUSER; *--User QM library;
```

- d. Execute this SAS program and the Query Manager tables will be created. The following SAS tables will be created:

SASUSER_DB2TAB	DB2 table information
SASUSER_DB2COLS	DB2 column information
SASUSER_DB2RELS	Relations for joining tables
SASUSER_DB2INDX	Defined indexes in DB2.

### 3. Create the Query Manager Definitions

The Query Manager contains information that indicates the database to be used, as well as the location of the SAS Query Manager tables created in the last step. You can also specify the name of the program to be used to recreate (refresh) the SAS Query Manager tables. See Chapter 9 in *SAS/ASSIST Software: Changes and Enhancements* for more information.

- a. Select the following from the SAS/ASSIST Primary menu to get to the Query Manager Administration window:

```
DATA MGMT...
QUERY...
Query and Reporting...
SETUP...
Administration
```

- b. Enter the following information to identify the location of the Query Manager tables as shown below:
  - For Database, enter DB2
  - For Program to Generate Query Manager tables, select No

- For Location of the Query Manager tables, enter SASUSER

**Note:** The remaining parameters are selected by default.

c. Save the Query Manager definition.

Select `Save As` from the `File` menu.

d. Enter name and description as shown in the following example (the Type and Catalog are already specified):

```
Type:          MANAGER
Name:          db2samp
Description:    Sample DB2 data
Catalog:       SASUSER.MANAGER
```

e. Select `OK` to save it.

#### 4. Using the Query Manager

a. Select the following from the SAS/ASSIST Primary menu to get to the Query window:

```
DATA MGMT...
QUERY...
Query and Reporting...
QUERY...
```

The Query window might attempt to load a Query Manager other than the one you defined (in Step 3 above), or you might be notified that one or more Query Manager tables are not found. You will be asked if you want to generate them. Select `No`.

b. To use the Query Manager that you defined (see Steps 2 and 3 above), select `Select Query Manager...` from the `Tools` menu.

A pop-up menu is displayed. Select the Query Manager you just defined DB2SAMP (in Step 3 above).

c. Select the `Select` button to get a list of DB2 data.

# Appendix K — Installing the BMDP Interface

## Introduction

The BMDP procedure (invoked in the SAS language as `PROC BMDP`) allows you to call BMDP modules. BMDP modules (such as BMDP1D) were part of the Biomedical Programs package available in the past from BMDP Statistical Software Inc. (later part of SPSS Inc.). The BMDP package is no longer available, but sites might still be using this software; therefore, the BMDP procedure continues to be supported within the SAS language. Please note that the BMDP package is **not** Y2K compliant, and precautions should be taken when running modules in this package. The BMDP procedure within the SAS language is Y2K compliant, however.

The BMDP procedure (`PROC BMDP`) converts an input SAS data set into a BMDP save file and loads user-provided BMDP control statements for processing the file. It then calls a BMDP program (for example, BMDP1D) to execute the control statements. `PROC BMDP` then prints the output of the BMDP program, interspersing by-line information if a `BY` statement is given.

The SAS BMDP interface is not necessary if your site does not have BMDP, or if you are only accessing BMDP data through the BMDP engine (via the `LIBNAME` statement or `PROC CONVERT`). You might want to survey your SAS users to determine if and how the BMDP interface will be used.

## Installation of the BMDP Interface

**Note:** This task is optional.

If your users plan to run `PROC BMDP`, you need to customize the SASBMDP CLIST and cataloged procedure (PROC) and install them in the appropriate libraries for user access at your site.

### STEP 1: Edit the BMDPEDTP member of the CNTL data set to specify the desired values for the BMDP parameters.

The BMDP parameters are defined as follows:

- **BMDPPNM=** specifies the name of the PROC to execute the SAS BMDP interface at your site.
- **BMDPCNM=** specifies the name of the CLIST to invoke the SAS BMDP interface at your site.
- **BMDPLOD=** specifies the name of the load library that contains the BMDP programs. This item is **required**.
- **BMDPNWS=** specifies the BMDP news file name. This is **optional**, and displays as part of the BMDP program's output. Use `NULLFILE` if you do not want to view the BMDP news file name in your log.
- **BMDPMAC=** specifies the name of the BMDP macro file. This is only used by the BMDP program and is optional. Use `NULLFILE` if it is not wanted.

### STEP 2: Review and submit the BMDPPOST job in the CNTL data set.

Submit the BMDPPOST job to tailor the CLIST and PROC, as well as the BABMDP job.

### STEP 3: Review the SASBMDP CLIST and PROC located in your CNTL data set.

Member BACLST02 contains the CLIST. BAPROC02 contains the PROC. The cataloged procedure and CLIST contain file allocations for three sets of files. These files are required for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, `PROC BMDP`, and the BMDP program.

If you have customized your SAS CLIST and cataloged procedure as described in the section “Customizing your SAS CLIST and Cataloged Procedure” on page 18, you might want to apply the same customizations here as well.

The files required for `PROC BMDP` are identified by the DDnames FT05F001, FT06F001, and FT03F001, which are defined as follows:

- **FT05F001** identifies the file into which `PROC BMDP` writes the BMDP control statements.
- **FT06F001** identifies the file into which `PROC BMDP` directs the BMDP program output listing for post-processing.

- **FT03F001** identifies the file into which `PROC BMDP` writes the converted `BMDP` save file. While the user can have `PROC BMDP` write to any unit number, `FT03F001` is the default. The user must supply the additional JCL if another `DDname` is used.

**STEP 4:**        **Review and then submit the BABMDP job in the CNTL data set that was tailored by the BMDPPOST job submitted in Step 2. This job copies the tailored SASBMDP CLIST and PROC to the libraries that you specified earlier in SASEDITP and executes the TESTBMDP validation program to verify the installation of the BMDP interface.**

## Appendix L — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/CONNECT Software

**Note:** *The post-installation setup for the SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS is different than previous releases. Please read this entire section carefully.*

**Note:** *For further information on the communication part of implementing and using SAS/CONNECT software, refer to Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT and SAS/SHARE Software and the SAS/CONNECT User's Guide which are both in the SAS OnlineDoc.*

**Note:** *To use SAS/CONNECT software, both the local and remote hosts must be running and licensed for SAS/CONNECT.*

**Note:** *Installation of the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is **absolutely required** if the SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS or SAS/CONNECT to the same multi-process machine on z/OS is to be implemented. See "Installing the SAS 9.1.3 SVC Routine" on page 36 for details.*

**Note:** *Any references to the z/OS operating system also apply to the OS/390 operating system, unless otherwise stated.*

### Configuring SAS/CONNECT

This appendix shows you how to configure SAS/CONNECT. The following topics are covered:

1. communication access methods supported for SAS/CONNECT on z/OS
  - A. TCP (used with basic telnet session and with the z/OS SAS/CONNECT Spawner)
  - B. XMS (used in Configuration of SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor machine)
2. storing and locating SAS/CONNECT Script files
3. connection types available with SAS/CONNECT on z/OS
  - A. SAS/CONNECT Basic Telnet session
  - B. SAS/CONNECT Spawner
  - C. SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor machine

#### 1. Communication Access Methods supported for SAS/CONNECT on z/OS

Which access method to use depends on the type of connection being setup. The access methods supported for z/OS are TCP/IP, and XMS. Refer to the appropriate sections for the access methods you will be using at your site, for requirement information. Refer to *Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT 9.1 and SAS/SHARE 9.1* for additional details on the access methods supported by other systems.

##### A. System Configuration for the TCP Access Method

With the TCP/IP access method, SAS/CONNECT software requires the SAS Transient Library shipped with this version of SAS and one of the following TCP/IP packages:

- IBM OS/390 V2R8 TCP/IP or later
- Computer Associates TCPAccess 6.0 or later

For details on configuring either of these products for use with SAS/CONNECT Software, refer to "System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP" on page 18.

## B. System Configuration XMS (Cross Memory Services) Access Method

For details on configuring XMS refer to section “SAS/CONNECT to the same multi-process machine on z/OS” on page 108.

## 2. Storing and Locating SAS/CONNECT Script Files

Several sample script files are shipped with SAS/CONNECT software. SAS/CONNECT software uses these script files to establish a connection to a remote SAS session by physically logging the user on to the remote host. The install process places the script files into your `&prefix.CTMISC` data set. These script files must be customized to match the logon procedures that are specific to your site. Script files are used to establish a SAS/CONNECT basic Telnet session and can optionally be used to establish a SAS/CONNECT Spawner session.

To use the script file with the SAS/CONNECT product, a file reference of RLINK must be allocated to a customized script file. There are other methods of allocating the script file, for more details on this, refer to the *SAS/CONNECT User's Guide*.

The SAS option, `SASSCRIPT`, points to the location of the SAS/CONNECT script files. The `SASSCRIPT` option is only used by SAS/ASSIST and by user-written SCL applications.

The value of the `SASSCRIPT` option can be one or more concatenated data set names (including PDS files).

```
SASSCRIPT=( 'MVS:prefix.CTMISC' 'userid.CTMISC' )
```

The simplest way for you to give your users automatic access to the installed sample script files is to place the above option in your configuration file.

**Note:** *The script file must be customized to match the logon process to your remote host. Connecting to the remote host via Telnet outside of SAS is recommended to see the necessary screens and messages that need to be handled by the script.*

## 3. Types of connections available with SAS/CONNECT on z/OS

### SAS/CONNECT Basic Telnet session

**Note:** *The SAS/CONNECT basic Telnet session requires that you configure SAS for communication with TCP/IP. For this reason, please ensure that you have reviewed and completed the steps in the section “System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP” on page 18.*

Requirements:

- To use the basic telnet SAS/CONNECT signon, telnet must be enabled on both local and remote hosts (either in line mode or fullscreen/TN3270).
- A customized script needs to be set up on the local host. See the previous section “2. Storing and Locating SAS/CONNECT Script Files” for more information.
- A valid user ID for the remote host.

For details on using and implementing the basic telnet SAS/CONNECT feature, refer to the *SAS/CONNECT User's Guide*.

## SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS

**Note:** The SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS requires that you configure SAS for communication with TCP/IP. For this reason, please ensure that you have reviewed and completed the steps in the section “System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP” on page 18.

### Benefits to Using the Spawner:

There are several benefits to using the spawner. Use of the spawner

- does not require TELNET.
- does not require being physically logged on to TSO. Since this is not a TSO logon session, the user can sign on several times concurrently.
- does not require using a signon script (it is optional).
- initiates SAS/CONNECT sessions on z/OS systems without requiring that username and password pairs be passed over the network in clear text mode.
- encrypts all data that flows from the local host to the spawner program during sign on by default (if the local SAS session is running Release 6.09E, Release 6.11 TSO40, or a subsequent release,). The SAS/CONNECT Spawner program supports encrypted signons, by default, to a z/OS system with or without scripts.
- facilitates use of SAS/CONNECT through a firewall. The spawner supports socket inheritance thereby limiting the number of open ports.

### SAS/CONNECT Spawner Security Configuration

Security requirements for the SAS 9.1.3 SAS/CONNECT Spawner running on z/OS differ from previous releases.

- The spawner no longer needs to run with a uid=0
- Load libraries do not need to be APF-authorized
- The user ID of the spawner process does not require READ access to the BPX.DAEMON RACF profile

The spawner runs as a daemon process, so correct daemon security needs to be implemented based on the security software running on your machine (RACF, ACF2, or TOP Secret). IBM defines two levels of security for daemon processes, traditional UNIX security and z/OS UNIX System Services security. For SAS/CONNECT Spawner 9.1.3, these daemon processes do not require a UID of ‘0’ but should be loaded from a program-controlled library if the BPX.DAEMON is defined.

The spawner validates user IDs and passwords using the \_\_passwd service. It then starts an address space for the SAS/CONNECT session, using the USS spawn service.

### Security Requirements for Client/User

You must have an USS (UNIX System Service) segment defined in the security software (either an individual segment or a site-default USS segment.)

### Security Requirements for Spawner

- A USS segment.
- Read Access for the CTRANS library and the load library.
- Update access to the HFS logs defined in the started task.
- If the BPX.DAEMON is defined, then the &prefix.LIBRARY and the CTRANS library need to be under program control.

The SAS/CONNECT Spawner uses the UNIX System Services (USS) \_\_passwd service to validate the user ID and password of clients connecting to the spawner. If the client authenticates successfully, the spawner uses the USS spawn service to invoke a remote SAS session for the client.

What follows are examples of security definitions for RACF. If your site uses ACF2 and TOP Secret security products, please consult the associated security software documentation for configuring UNIX System Services daemon security.

## **RACF Security**

The RACF Security Server defines the BPX.DAEMON profile of the RACF facility class to allow a daemon program to spawn processes with user IDs different from that of the daemon. This allows the site to run a daemon and associate it with a minimally-authorized user ID that does not have root user (uid=0) authority. To assign a user ID to the started task, either add the started task to the RACF Started Procedures Table ICHRINO3, or define a profile for the started task in the RACF started class.

If RACF program control is enabled on your system and if the BPX.DAEMON profile is active, RACF requires that all modules loaded into the spawner address space come from RACF program-controlled libraries. This applies to both the SAS load library ('prefix.LIBRARY') and the CTRANS library. If this is not set up correctly, the spawner will receive a USS JREnvDirty reason code on the \_\_\_passwd call. These messages will be issued to the system log.

```
ICH420I PROGRAM xxxxxxxx CAUSED THE ENVIRONMENT TO BECOME UNCONTROLLED.  
BPXP014I ENVIRONMENT MUST BE CONTROLLED FOR DAEMON (BPX.DAEMON)  
PROCESSING.
```

To diagnose a dirty address space, look at informational APAR IIo8176 and the IBM documentation it references.

To list the status of Program Control, issue the following command:

```
SETROPTS LIST
```

If the results of the above command list WHEN(PROGRAM) in the ATTRIBUTES, then RACF Program Control is already active.

Otherwise, to enable Program Control, use the following command:

```
SETROPTS WHEN (PROGRAM)
```

When Program Control is enabled, all modules loaded into the spawner's address space must come from a RACF Program-Controlled Library. The command to make the SAS load library and CTRANS library program controlled is:

```
RDEFINE PROGRAM ** UACC(READ) ADDMEM +  
( 'prefix.SAS.LOAD' //NOPADCHK +  
  'prefix.SASC.TRANSLIB' //NOPADCHK)
```

Use RALTER command instead of REDEFINE if \* or \*\* already exists from a previous definition.

To refresh any changes, issue the following RACF command. It does not matter if the RACF databases are shared or not.

```
SETROPTS WHEN (PROGRAM) REFRESH
```

To enable the RACF BPX.DAEMON profile of the FACILITY class, issue the following commands:

```
RDEFINE FACILITY BPX.DAEMON UACC(NONE)
SETROPTS CLASSACT(FACILITY)
SETROPTS RACLIST(FACILITY)
SETROPTS RACLIST(FACILITY) REFRESH
```

Note that the spawner user ID does not require READ access to the BPX.DAEMON profile. For more information, please refer to your *OS/390 Security Server (RACF) Command Language Reference*. For sites running z/OS V1R4 (HBB7707), APAR OA02711 is required to successfully execute the SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS in a RACF program control environment.

### Setting up the SAS/CONNECT Spawner Procedure

The SAS/CONNECT Spawner runs as an z/OS started task and uses z/OS UNIX System Services (USS) to start each user's SAS/CONNECT session. Each session runs in a BPXAS address space, executing the UNIX System Services TSO command to run the SAS CLIST.

The spawner module is SASTCPD and is located in the SAS load module library. The spawner uses the SAS Transient library. This library might be installed in LPA, LINKLIST, or allocated to the STEPLIB or to CTRANS DD in the Spawner Started Task JCL. A sample spawner started task procedure can be found in '&prefix.CNTL(SPNCJ91)'.

The Spawner Started Task requires a parms file. A sample parms file can be found in '&prefix.CNTL(SPNCJ91)'. Here is the syntax for the options you might specify in the parms file to configure the SAS/CONNECT Spawner program for z/OS:

```
<-HELP>
<-INHERITANCE | -NOINHERITANCE>
<-NETENCRALG algorithm>
<-NETENCRYPT>
<-NETENCRKEY n>
<-NOCLEARTEXT>
<-NOSCRIP>
<-SASCMD command>
<-SERVICE service-name>
```

#### ❑ -HELP

prints a list of valid options and terminates the spawner started task.

#### ❑ -INHERITANCE | - NOINHERITANCE

Specifies whether the SAS session that is spawned inherits the socket that was created when the spawner accepted the initial connection from the local SAS session. This option is useful if your configuration involves a firewall and you want to minimize the number of ports that you define to the firewall for use by SAS/CONNECT. The default is -INHERITANCE.

If you start a spawner with the -INHERITANCE option, you then define the port that the spawner is listening on to the firewall and map it to the server machine's port. This will enable any number of SAS/CONNECT clients to connect through this single port and SIGNON to a remote host on the inside of the firewall. Each client just opens a unique socket on the defined port. This eliminates the need to define an individual port for each client that might need to come in through the firewall. In this configuration you set your REMOTE= value to a two-level name where the first level is the name of the

host running the firewall and the second level is the well-known service name of the port that you have enabled for connections.

❑ -NETENCALG algorithm

To specify more than one algorithm, simply repeat this option.

Set this option at the remote host and, optionally, at the local host to specify one or more encryption algorithms to use in a SAS/CONNECT session. However, the local host and the remote host must share an encryption algorithm in common. If you specify the option in the remote host session only, the local host attempts to select an algorithm that was specified at the remote host. If you also set the option at the local host and specify an algorithm that is not specified at the remote host, the local host's attempt to connect to that remote host fails.

The following are valid values for this option:

- RC2\*
- RC4\*
- DES\*
- TripleDES\*
- SASPROPRIETARY

\* indicates the algorithm is available with SAS/SECURE

See the *SAS/CONNECT User's Guide* or the *SAS/SHARE User's Guide* for more information about the NETENCALG option.

❑ -NETENCRYPT

Set this option at the local host and/or the remote host. At the remote host, this option specifies that encryption is required for each connection from a local host SAS session. At the local host, this option specifies that the local host must connect only to a remote host that supports encryption.

The default for this option is that encryption is used if the NETENCALG option is set and if both the local host and the remote host are capable of encryption. If encryption algorithms were specified but either the local host or the remote host is incapable of encryption, then encryption will not be performed.

Encryption might not be supported at the local host or the remote host for the following reasons:

- You are running a release of SAS (prior to Version 7) that does not support encryption.
- Your site has not purchased a SAS/SECURE license for a specific platform.
- You specified encryption algorithms in the local host and the remote host SAS sessions that are incompatible.

See the *SAS/CONNECT User's Guide* or the *SAS/SHARE User's Guide* for more information about the -NETENCRYPT option.

❑ -NETENCRKEY n

Set this option in either the local host or the remote host SAS session. It specifies the key length to be used by the encryption algorithm.

Valid values for this option are as follows:

- 128 specifies 1024-bit RSA and 128-bit RC2 and RC4 key algorithms.
- 40 specifies 512-bit RSA and 40-bit RC2 and RC4 key algorithms. Note that specifying 40 is incompatible with DES and TRIPLEDES, and will not allow negotiation of these algorithms.
- 0 no value is set. This is the default.

If extra security is needed, set the -NETENCRKEY option to 128. If you prefer to save CPU cycles, then set the -NETENCRKEY option to 40.

By default, if you try to connect a host that is capable of only a 40-bit key length with a host that is capable of both a 40-bit and a 128-bit key length, then the connection is made using the lesser key length. If both hosts are capable of 128-bit key lengths, then a 128-bit key length is used.

See the *SAS/CONNECT User's Guide* or the *SAS/SHARE User's Guide* for more information about the -NETENCRKEY option.

❑ -NOCLEARTEXT

prevents a sign on from a local host that does not support username and password encryption. This option prevents local hosts in a SAS session that are running releases prior to 6.09E and 6.11 TSO40 from signing on to the spawner program. The default is to accept both encrypted and clear-text userids and passwords. This allows local hosts in a SAS session that are running releases prior to 6.09E and 6.11 TSO40 to sign on to the z/OS spawner program.

❑ -NOSCRIP

prevents signons from local hosts that use scripts, and allows signons only from local hosts that do not use scripts.

This option requires that the user set security in the local SAS session prior to sign on. For details about setting security (for example, by means of the USER= and PASSWORD= options in an appropriate statement), refer to "Setting Security for SAS/CONNECT and SAS/SHARE" in *Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT 9.1 and SAS/SHARE 9.1*.

If you use the -NOSCRIP option, you must also use the -SASCMD option.

❑ -SASCMD command

specifies the UNIX System Services (USS) shell script that starts a SAS session when you sign on without a script. If the RLINK fileref is not defined in the local host SAS session, then the user is signing on without a script. In this case, the -SASCMD option must be specified.

The script interprets the command arguments and environment variables and builds a TSO command to invoke a SAS session. Please see "Defining the SAS Startup Shell Script" on page 105 for an example shell script.

❑ -SERVICE service-name or port number

specifies the name or TCP/IP port number of the service that the z/OS spawner program uses to listen for incoming requests. This value is identical to the service value in the REMOTE= option that the user specifies at the local host prior to sign on. Because there is no default, you must specify this value.

If the value of the service is given as a name, it must be defined identically in the SERVICES file on both the client and server. For details about the SERVICES files, refer to "Specifying the Remote Node Name" in *Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT 9.1 and SAS/SHARE 9.1*. If a port number is used, be sure that it does not conflict with any values assigned to other servers, and that it is in the range 1-65535.

## Defining the SAS Startup Shell Script

Beginning with SAS 9, the SAS/CONNECT Spawner no longer executes a TSO CLIST directly as the -SASCMD, but instead a UNIX System Services (USS) shell script. The spawner invokes the USS shell script specified in either the SAS/Connect signon script or the -SASCMD spawner option. An example of a -SASCMD follows:

```
-sascmd "/usr/lpp/SAS/spawnsas.sh nosasuser opt('dmr noterminal nosyntaxcheck
comamid=tcp')"
```

In this example, the command assumes a shell script named `spawnsas.sh` is installed in `/usr/lpp/SAS`. The command specifies the `NOSASUSER SAS CLIST` option, and four SAS options: `DMR`, `NOTERMINAL`, `NOSYNTAXCHECK`, and `COMAMID=TCP`. Note that the two single quotes specified around the SAS options are required.

The shell script will interpret the parameters passed in by the spawner and build a TSO command for invoking SAS. The following is an example shell script. A sample shell script can be found in `'&prefix.CNTL(SPNCS91)'`. The sample shell script can be copied to USS using the TSO `OCOPY` or `OPUT` commands. For example:

`OPUT '&prefix.CNTL(SPNCS91)' '/usr/lpp/SAS/spawnsas.sh' text`

In the example shell script below, the shell script parses a command and interprets environment variables to build a TSO command to start SAS. This command is executed using the USS `/bin/tso` command.

In this example, change the value of `&prefix` to the high-level qualifier of your CLIST library that contains the TSO command to start SAS.

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# Initialize SAS startup command...
#
cmd="/bin/tso -t EX '&prefix.CNTL(SPNCC91)' '"
#
# Construct CLIST parameters from command arguments
#
for arg in "$@"; do
    cmd="$cmd$arg "
done
#
# Construct CLIST parameters from environment variables
#
if [ -n "$INHERIT" ] ; then
    inherit="INHERIT($INHERIT) "
fi
if [ -n "$NETENCALG" ] ; then
    netencalg="NETENCALG($NETENCALG) "
fi
if [ -n "$SASDAEMONPORT" ] ; then
    sasdaemonport="SASDAEMONPORT($SASDAEMONPORT) "
fi
if [ -n "$SASCLIENTPORT" ] ; then
    sasclientport="SASCLIENTPORT($SASCLIENTPORT) "
```

```

fi
if [ -n "$TCPDFILE" ] ; then
    tcpdebug="TCPDEBUG (62) "
fi

cmd="$cmd $sasdaemonport $sasclientport $inherit $netencralg'"

#
# Set additional environment variables...
# SYSPROC specifies the data set containing the SAS CLIST/REXX
# STEPLIB of null required to prevent propagation of spawner's STEPLIB
#
export SYSPROC=&prefix.CNTL
export STEPLIB=
#
# Start SAS
#
exec $cmd

```

**Note:** A sample spawner CLIST is provided in `&prefix.CNTL (SPNCC91)`.

### **Starting/Stopping the SAS/CONNECT Spawner for z/OS Program**

To start the spawner, enter the following operator console command:

```
START SPAWNER
```

To stop the spawner, enter the following operator console command:

```
STOP SPAWNER
```

### **Examples of Starting and Connecting to the z/OS Spawner Program**

The following examples illustrate how to start the spawner program and how to connect to it.

#### **Example 1**

The following z/OS command starts the spawner program at the remote z/OS host with the service-name spawner and disallows clear-text sign ons from local hosts that use a script.

```
START SPAWNER
```

It uses the following PARMS file:

```

-service spawner
-nocleartext

```

At a local host, the following statements specify a script file named `tcpmvs.scr` that makes a connection to the spawner program on the system `RMTHOST`, which is listening on the port that is named `spawner`. The value for `REMOTE=` is the host name of the z/OS node, or it can be a macro variable that contains that host name, where the spawner program is running.

```
options comamid=tcp;
filename rlink '!sasroot\connect\saslink\tcpmvs.scr';
signon rmthost.spawner;
```

## Example 2

In the following examples, the command specified in the `-sascmd` option is a USS (Unix System Services) shell script that invokes a SAS session.. The following z/OS command starts the spawner program at the remote z/OS host.

```
START SPAWNER
```

It uses the following `PARMS` file:

```
-service spawner
-inheritance
-noscript
-netencralg rc2
-netencralg des

-sascmd "/usr/local/bin/spawnsas.sh nosasuser opt('dmr notterminal nosyntaxcheck
comamid=tcp')"
```

Note that the two single quotes specified around the SAS options are required.

At a local host, the TCP/IP access method is used to connect to the remote host named `RMTHOST`. This must be either the host name of the z/OS node, or a macro variable that contains that host name, where the spawner program is running. The `USER=` option in the `SIGNON` statement prompts the user for a user ID and password when connecting to `RMTHOST`, on which the z/OS spawner program named `spawner` runs.

```
options comamid=tcp;
signon rmthost.spawner user=_prompt_ ;
```

## SAS/CONNECT to the same multi-process machine on z/OS

This signon type was formerly documented as “MP CONNECT.” “Multi-Process (MP) CONNECT” exploits a local host’s multi-processor capability, as well as multi-processors across a network, by allowing parallel processing of self-contained tasks and the coordination of all the results into the original SAS session. SAS/CONNECT accomplishes multi-processing by means of asynchronous rsubmits.

When MP CONNECT processing needs to be done on the same host as the local host, a `SASCMD` signon might be used to initiate one or more “remote” SAS sessions. For OS/390 hosts, the `SASCMD` signon uses the cross-memory services (XMS) access method. The `SASCMD=` option is used for specifying options and values that are passed to a dynamically created DMR session. For details on usage of the MP CONNECT feature, refer to the “SAS/CONNECT User’s Guide.”

## System Configuration for SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor machine

To implement the XMS access method, which is used by this type of signon, complete the following steps:

**STEP 1: Install the SASVXMS Load Module.**

This procedure is described on page 183 of the appendix “Appendix X — Implementing SAS/SHARE Software.” The SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor machine and SAS/SHARE both require the installation of the SASVXMS module. During the installation of SAS/SHARE, you might choose to rename the SASVXMS load module to SASVXMSn, where n is any alpha-numeric character. However, SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor machine by default looks for the unsuffixed module name of SASVXMS. If you need SAS/SHARE and SAS/CONNECT to use the same suffixed SASVXMSn module, a zap will need to be applied for SAS/CONNECT. See usage note SN-004319.

**STEP 2: Define an Anchor Point.**

This procedure is described on page 184 of “Appendix X — Implementing SAS/SHARE Software.”

**STEP 3: Install the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine.**

This procedure is described in “Installing the SAS 9.1.3 SVC Routine” on page 36.

***Considerations for Using XMS with SAS/CONNECT to same multi-processor Machine***

System administrators should note that the remote (DMR) SAS sessions spawned by MP CONNECT will be connected to their local client OS/390 session exclusively with the cross-memory access method.

Like XMS SHARE servers, these DMR server sessions will have their OS/390 ASID marked “temporarily non-reusable” by the operating system when their address space terminates. The DMR address space will be terminated in response to the signoff command. The ASID will remain non-reusable until the client address space is terminated -- when the client TSO session logs off, started task ends or batch initiator is drained. Customers should therefore follow IBM recommendations by not spawning DMR sessions from long running address spaces.

In addition, customers should guard against spawning excessive numbers of DMR sessions from a single client session. A complete discussion of how OS/390 manages cross memory ASIDs can be found in section 3.9 of *OS/390 MVS Programming: Extended Addressability Guide (GC28-1769)*. SAS XMS servers, both SHARE and DMR, create non-system LXs for purposes of that discussion.

Note also that the spawning of XMS DMR session utilizes OS/390 UNIX System Services, including the BPX1FRK interface (UNIX fork support). If these services are not present in the host OS/390 system and usable by the client session, the DMR server creation will fail.



## Appendix M — Post-Installation Setup of SAS Enterprise Miner Server Software

These instructions cover post-installation steps for **SAS Enterprise Miner 4.3**. For post-installation setup of SAS Enterprise Miner 5.1, refer to “Preparing Enterprise Miner for Use” in the *SAS Intelligence Platform: Administration Guide*.

### Installing SAS Enterprise Miner Server Software

If you licensed SAS Enterprise Miner software and have completed the installation, you have installed the server components of SAS Enterprise Miner software (referred to as the SAS Enterprise Miner server). SAS Enterprise Miner Server software is invoked from the SAS Enterprise Miner Client via SAS/CONNECT. For more information on running Enterprise Miner, refer to *Getting Started with the SAS Enterprise Miner Software, Release 4.3*, and *SAS Enterprise Miner Software: Changes and Enhancements, Release 4.3*.

**Note:** *Enterprise Miner requires that you configure SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for SAS/CONNECT. For this reason, please ensure that you have reviewed and completed the steps in “Appendix L — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/CONNECT Software.”*

### Configuring SAS Enterprise Miner Server Software

#### Setup Default Remote Data Library

All users who will be connecting to the SAS Enterprise Miner Server must have their own SAS library allocated and cataloged. Each user must be granted UPDATE access to this library.

**REPEAT:** One library for each user, with each user having update access to their specific library.

A SAS Data Library requires the following DCB attributes:

- DSORG=PS
- RECFM=FS
- BLKSIZE=value\*
- LRECL=same value as BLKSIZE

\* value can be from 4096 to 27648 in increments of 512. The default is 6144. Half track blocking of 23040 on a 3380 and 27648 on a 3390 should be considered if you know what type of device the library will reside on. Otherwise, use the 6144 value.

#### Provide Information to Configure SAS Enterprise Miner Client Software

Provide the following information to users of SAS Enterprise Miner Client software in order for them to successfully create a server profile on the SAS Enterprise Miner Client:

- machine name and IP address
- how to invoke SAS 9.1.3 Foundation with SAS/CONNECT
- how to access the default remote data library

## Testing the Server Install

Enterprise Miner Server software is invoked from the SAS Enterprise Miner Client via SAS/CONNECT software. For more information on running SAS Enterprise Miner software, refer to *Getting Started with SAS Enterprise Miner Software*. You must create a client/server project from the Windows client to fully test all server aspects of Enterprise Miner. However, for a quick test on the server to see that you are picking up the correct SAS Enterprise Miner components, execute the following:

1. Start SAS interactively on the Server
2. Submit the following code on the Server:

```
proc display c=sashelp.dmcon.version.scl; run;
```

3. You should see the following message in the SAS Log:

```
NOTE: SAS Enterprise Miner Server version 4.3
```

## Appendix N — Implementing SAS Fraud Management Software

For further information on implementing and using SAS Fraud Management software, please refer to the *SAS Fraud Management: System Administrator's Guide*. The SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine is a component of the SAS Fraud Management. The SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine is comprised of the controller, monitor agent, and the SAS scoring engines. The following sections discuss the controller, monitor agent, and SAS scoring engine implementation.

### *Special Files for Use with the Controller Software*

#### Customizing the Configuration File for the Controller

**Note:** *This task is required.*

Member RAPTPARM of the `&prefix.OSEvv.CNTL` data set is provided as a default configuration file for the controller. The member contains sample initialization statements and is included in the library specified by RAPTPARM in the controller started task JCL.

**STEP 1:** Create the RAPTPARM configuration file. Using the sample RAPTPARM, create a configuration file according to your site's requirements. Refer to the *SAS Fraud Management: System Administrator's Guide*, Chapter 2, "Configuring the SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine," for information regarding the RAPTPARM configuration file.

**Note:** *Member RAPTPARM contains a RAPTVR client jobname for installation validation. This client can be removed after installation verification.*

**STEP 2:** Notify the server administrator that this file has been provided.

### *System Configuration*

#### Creating the Controller Environment

**Note:** *This task is required.*

**STEP 1:** The load module library `&prefix.OSEvv.LIBRARY` must be defined to your z/OS system as an APF authorized library. Contact your z/OS system programmer to perform this task.

**STEP 2:** Copy member RAPTXMS from the `&prefix.OSEvv.CNTL` data set into a JES defined PROCLIB to create the started task procedure for the controller.

**STEP 3:** Ensure TIME=1440 or TIME=NOLIMIT is specified on the EXEC statement. Update the RAPTPARM DD statement to specify the RAPTPARM configuration file.

**STEP 4:** Using RACF or an equivalent security product, assign a user ID to the controller started task. The user ID must have READ access to the STEPLIB data set `&prefix.OSEvv.LIBRARY` and to the RAPTPARM data set.

**STEP 5:** The controller establishes an extended MCS console in order to receive messages from the SAS scoring engines. The console name is derived from the XMS version as defined in RAPTPARM and the system's SMFid. If the use of extended MCS consoles are controlled by the system's security product, then ensure the controller's user ID has access to create the extended MCS console.

## Creating the Monitor Agent Environment

**Note:** *This task is required.*

- STEP 1:** Copy member RAPTMON from the `&prefix.OSEvv.CNTL` data set into a JES defined PROCLIB to create the started task procedure for the monitor agent address space. If the procedure name is changed, then the PROC parameter on the MONAGENT statement must be updated.
- STEP 2:** Ensure TIME=1440 or TIME=NOLIMIT is specified on the EXEC statement.
- STEP 3:** Using RACF or an equivalent security product, assign a user ID to the monitor agent started task whose jobname is specified on the JOBNAME parameter of the MONAGENT statement.

## Creating the SAS Scoring Engine Environment

**Note:** *This task is required.*

- STEP 1:** Copy member SASOSE from the `&prefix.OSEvv.CNTL` data set into a JES defined PROCLIB to create the started task procedure for the SAS scoring engine address spaces. If the procedure name is changed, then the PROC parameter on the SERVER statement must be updated.
- STEP 2:** Ensure TIME=1440 or TIME=NOLIMIT is specified on the EXEC statement.
- STEP 3:** Using RACF or an equivalent security product, assign a user ID to the SAS scoring engine started tasks whose jobname prefix is specified on the JOBNAME parameter of the SERVER statement. The user ID must have READ access to the SAS libraries specified in the SASOSE procedure. Use generic profiles if possible (for example, SASOSE%.\*\*) since there can be multiple scoring engines.

## Testing the SAS Fraud Management Installation

- STEP 1:** Start the SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine by issuing an MVS START command for the controller started task. The controller will internally start the SAS scoring engines. The following messages will be written to both the console log and RAPTLOG DD during startup:

```
RAPTXMS/00 SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine controller V2.0
RAPTXMS/00 Copyright (c) 2005 by SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC, USA
RAPTCONS/40 EMCS console xmsidsmfid has been activated
RAPTCONS/23 Started jobnameA - Server=server_name
RAPTCONS/23 Started jobnameB - Server=server_name
RAPTCONS/60 XMSx monitoring agent has been started - Jobname=jobname
RAPTCONS/06 Controller initialization is complete for XMSx
```

- STEP 2:** Once each SAS scoring engine has completed initialization, it will issue the following message:

```
RAPTPC01/01 jobname - Ready for work - Build=buildid
```

Using member RAPTVR from the `&prefix.OSEvv.CNTL` data set, make any necessary site-dependent JCL changes, and submit for execution after the servers have initialized. Make sure the PARM parameter on the EXEC card specifies the XMS version as defined in RAPTPARM. The STEPLIB DD statement must point to `&prefix.OSEvv.LIBRARY`.

A return code of zero indicates a successful install. Examine REPORT DD for non-zero return codes.

**Note:** *If the job name is changed from RAPTVR, then the client jobname in the parameter file must reflect this change.*

## Customizing RAPTCMD

**Note:** *This task is optional.*

RAPTCMD is a tool that allows you to issue controller command from either a TSO/E command or a z/OS UNIX program. Refer to *SAS Fraud Management: System Administrator's Guide* for use and syntax. RAPTCMD is an authorized program residing in library `&prefix.OSEvv.LIBRARY`. The library must be APF authorized and accessible via the LINKLIST or STEPLIB. To execute as a TSO/E command, an entry for RAPTCMD must be added to the authorized command table IKJT000 in SYS1.PARMLIB.

To execute under z/OS UNIX, place RAPTCMD into the desired pathname (for example, `/usr/local/bin`) using one of the following methods. Note that method 3 does not require RAPTCMD to reside in an APF-authorized LINKLIST or STEPLIB library.

**Method 1: Define RAPTCMD as an external link to load RAPTCMD from the caller's MVS load library search order:**

```
ln -e RAPTCMD /usr/local/bin/raptcmd
```

**Method 2: Turn on the stick-bit for RAPTCMD to load RAPTCMD from the caller's MVS load library search order:**

```
touch /usr/local/bin/raptcmd
chmod 1755 /usr/local/bin/raptcmd
```

**Method 3: Copy RAPTCMD into the z/OS UNIX file system using the following sample LINKEDIT job:**

```
//          JOB ,
//LKED      EXEC PGM=IEWL, PARM='XREF,LET,LIST,NCAL,RENT,REFR,CASE=MIXED,X
//          PATHMODE(0,7,5,5),AC=1'
//SYSLMOD   DD PATH='/usr/local/bin',
//          PATHOPTS=(OWRONLY,OCREAT,OTRUNC)
//SYSLIN    DD DISP=SHR,DSN=&prefix.OSEvv.LIBRARY(RAPTCMD)
//          DD DDNAME=SYSIN
//SYSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN     DD *
NAME raptcmd(R)
```

After the LINKEDIT job completes, the APF extended attribute must be turned on via the extattr shell command:

```
extattr +a /usr/local/bin/raptcmdCICS REQUIREMENTS
```

## CICS REQUIREMENTS

### CICS ADAPTER: RXMSAPI

The CICS adapter, RXMSAPI, connects a CICS subsystem to the SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine, enabling the Universal SAS Connector application programs to communicate to the SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine.

RXMSAPI provides two main facilities:

- Logon and logoff functions to the SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine.
- Message support for Universal SAS Connector application programs.

RXMSAPI uses standard CICS command-level services where required, for example, EXEC CICS WAIT EXTERNAL.

RXMSAPI must be copied from the load module library *&prefix.OSEvv.LIBRARY* to the appropriate CICS Universal SAS Connector load library before the Universal SAS Connector can communicate with the SAS OnDemand Scoring Engine.

Please add the following PPT definition to your DFHCSD file.

#### **PPT Requirements:**

```

PROGram          :RXMSAPI
Group            :<user defined group>
DEscription      :Adapter to OSE
Language         :Assembler
Resident         :No
USAge            :Normal
USElpacopy       :No
Status           :Enabled
RS1              :00
CEdf             :Yes
DAtalocation     :Below
EXECKey          :Cics
COncurrency      :Quasirent
REMOTE ATTRIBUTES
DYnamic          :No
REMOTESystem     :
REMOTENAME       :
Transid          :
EXECUTIONset     :Fullapi
JVM ATTRIBUTES
JVM              :No
JVMClass         :
  (Mixed Case)   :

JVMPProfile      :DFHJVMPR
JAVA PROGRAM OBJECT ATTRIBUTES
Hotpool          :No
  
```

# Appendix O — Implementing SAS/GRAPH Software

## *Understanding the Organization of this Appendix*

This appendix is divided into five parts. Each part describes a set of the post-installation tasks that might be necessary to use SAS/GRAPH software at your site. The list is an overview of each part. Use this overview to help locate the information you require.

- **Part 1, Accessing the SAS/GRAPH Maps Data Sets**  
describes how to allocate the MAPS library in your installed CLIST or cataloged procedure. You must perform this task if users at your site need to access maps.
- **Part 2, Customizing Devices**  
provides the information necessary to customize device drivers for your graphic devices.
- **Part 3, Setting up and Modifying Device Catalogs**  
describes how to create or modify device catalog entries in order to customize device driver output to the needs of your site.
- **Part 4, Device Help Screens**  
describes how to use SAS/GRAPH device drivers and to set up system parameters that are required to use certain drivers.
- **Part 5, JAVAIMG – Server-side Java graphs**  
describes how to generate graphs rendered with SAS/GRAPH Java applets on MVS.

## **Part 1 — Accessing the SAS/GRAPH Maps Data Sets**

All installed SAS/GRAPH maps data sets are merged into the common MAPS library by the installation jobs. To enable your users to access the maps data sets when operating under TSO, modify your installed SAS CLIST to include the following allocate statement for the MAPS library. Include it after the allocation of the `SAMPSTIO` library.

```
ALLOC F(MAPS) DA('&prefix.MAPS') SHR REU
```

To access the maps data sets when running under batch, modify your installed SAS cataloged procedure to include the following DD statement for the MAPS library.

```
//MAPS DD DSN=&prefix.MAPS, DISP=SHR
```

## **Part 2 — Customizing Devices**

### **Setting up a SAS/GRAPH Translate Table**

A translate table is only needed if you are using ASCII terminals or attached plotters interactively on ASCII lines. You do not have to worry about translate tables if all of your asynchronous devices are used with 3270-type or 3287-type protocol converters.

If you encounter problems when using SAS/GRAPH software with ASCII terminals or attached plotters interactively on ASCII lines, contact SAS Technical Support.

### **Using SAS/GRAPH Software with ASCII Terminals and ASCII Terminal Emulators**

If you encounter problems when using SAS/GRAPH software with ASCII terminals and PCs running ASCII terminal emulation software, contact SAS Technical Support.

## Using SAS/GRAPH Software with ASCII Printers

When using SAS/GRAPH software with ASCII printers, the typical `GOPTIONS` statement that you need to specify in your SAS/GRAPH program is as follows:

```
GOPTIONS  DEVICE      = driver-name
          GPROTOCOL    = protocol-module
          GSFNAME      = GSASFILE
          GSFMODE      = REPLACE
          GSFLLEN      = 80;
```

These `GOPTIONS` tell the device driver to direct the graphics output to the fileref (or DDname) of `GSASFILE`. To use a `FILENAME` statement to assign the fileref of `GSASFILE` to a permanent data set, specify the following:

```
FILENAME GSASFILE 'your-host-file' LRECL=132 RECFM=VB;
```

To use a `FILENAME` statement to assign the fileref of `GSASFILE` to a `SYSOUT` class, specify the following:

```
FILENAME GSASFILE SYSOUT=sysout-class DEST=printer-dest;
```

The following are valid values for the 'protocol-module' value shown above:

<code>SASGPASC</code>	formats the graphics data stream as straight ASCII.
<code>SASGPSTD</code>	formats the graphics data stream as straight EBCDIC.
<code>SASGPAGL</code>	use with an AGILE protocol converter.
<code>SASGPISI</code>	use with an ISI 87 converter (as well as some AGILE converters).
<code>SASGPLCL</code>	Use with converters from Andrew Corporation (as well as older converters from KMW and Local Data).
<code>SASGPAXI</code>	Use with converters from AXIS Corporation.
<code>SASGPVAT</code>	Use with converters from Avatar.
<code>SASGPIDX</code>	Use with converters from IDEX Corporation.
<code>SASGPNET</code>	Use with converters from NetCommander, I-Data, and several others.
<code>SASGPDCA</code>	Use with IRMAprint, IRMAprint2, TEK 4512, and QMS AFPLink converters.
<code>SASGPCAB</code>	Use with converters from Cablenet.
<code>SASGPCHK</code>	Use with a Cherokee protocol converter.
<code>SASGPIOC</code>	Use with converters from I/O Corporation.

For more information about using SAS/GRAPH software with ASCII printers, consult the on-line help for SAS/GRAPH device drivers. If you encounter problems using SAS/GRAPH software with ASCII printers, contact SAS Technical Support.

## Installing the Linkable Driver

The Linkable device driver is a special SAS/GRAPH device driver that makes calls to vendor-supplied "CalComp compatible" plotting routines. Before you can use the Linkable driver, parts of it must be compiled and link-edited with your plotting routines.

Devices that typically require the use of the Linkable driver include Xerox 9700, 9790, and 8700 printers. If your site does not have a device that uses vendor-supplied subroutines, you do not have to worry about building a Linkable driver. If you do have devices that use vendor-supplied subroutines, contact SAS Technical Support for more information.

## Using SAS/GRAPH Software with IBM 3270-Type Terminals and 3270 Emulators

If you are using a display device that supports mainframe graphics and you are running SAS 9.1.3 Foundation in the windowing environment, output is automatically displayed on your screen when you run a SAS/GRAPH procedure and it is not necessary to specify a SAS/GRAPH device driver. Note that you must be running your SAS session interactively under TSO to display SAS/GRAPH output on your screen.

If you encounter problems displaying SAS/GRAPH output on the screen of your 3270 display device, the problem is usually that your 3270 display device is not properly configured to support mainframe graphics. To determine the graphics capability of your 3270 display device, invoke the windowing environment and issue the TERMSTAT command from any windowing environment command line. The TERMSTAT command writes device configuration information to the log window. In the SAS log, check that the following two lines appear under the DEVICE FEATURES section:

- Extended Data Stream
- Vector Graphics

If the two lines above do not appear under the DEVICE FEATURES section of the TERMSTAT information, check the following:

- If you have a real IBM graphics terminal, check to be sure that it supports mainframe graphics.
- If you have a PC running 3270 emulation software, make sure that your 3270 emulation software supports host graphics and also that your 3270 host session has been configured to support host graphics.
- Make sure that your 3270 display device is defined to VTAM as a device which supports extended data streams.
- Make sure that the control unit that your 3270 display device is attached to supports (or is configured to support) 3270 graphic data streams.

For more information, consult the on-line help for SAS/GRAPH device drivers. If you encounter problems when using SAS/GRAPH with 3270 display devices, contact SAS Technical Support.

## Using SAS/GRAPH Software with IBM 3287, 3268, and 4224 Printers

SAS/GRAPH software supports IBM graphics printers using either native (non-GDDM) device drivers or GDDM device drivers. For detailed information about using SAS/GRAPH software with IBM printers, consult the on-line help for SAS/GRAPH device drivers. If you encounter problems using SAS/GRAPH software with IBM graphics printers, contact SAS Technical Support.

## Using SAS/GRAPH Software with GDDM

SAS provides a set of drivers that interface with IBM's GDDM base product and can be used to direct output to any device supported by GDDM. The set of GDDM drivers comes standard with SAS/GRAPH software. You do not need to do anything extra to install the GDDM device drivers. Some of the GDDM device drivers are provided as an alternative to the SAS/GRAPH device drivers. For example, both the GDDMPCG and IBM3179 drivers produce graphics on an IBM 3179 Model G graphics terminal. The advantages of one over the other vary and depend on a particular site's requirements. On the other hand, some graphics devices require the use of a GDDM driver. These devices include IEEE-attached plotters (IBM 7372, IBM 6180, etc.) and IBM 3800-type laser printers (IBM 3800, 3812, 3820, etc.).

To use any of the GDDM drivers, the GDDM base product (IBM Program Number 5748-XXH) must be installed on your system. The GDDM load library is commonly installed in a system link list library so that the SAS/GRAPH GDDM drivers can load the module `ADMASPT`. `ADMASPT` is GDDM's System Programmer Interface routine. If the GDDM load library is not installed in a system link list library, concatenate it to the `STEPLIB DD` statement (if batch) or use the `LOAD` parameter in the SAS CLIST (if running interactively under TSO).

For more information about using SAS/GRAPH software with GDDM, consult the on-line help for SAS/GRAPH device drivers. If you encounter problems using SAS/GRAPH software with GDDM, contact SAS Technical Support.

## Part 3 — Setting Up and Modifying Device Catalogs

**Note:** The tasks described in this section are optional.

After installing SAS/GRAPH software, you might need to create or modify device catalog entries in order to customize device driver output to your site's needs. This section gives a brief explanation of device catalogs, and how to handle situations where catalog entries might need to be modified. For complete details on managing device catalogs, refer to "The GDEVICE Procedure," in the on-line help screens for SAS/Graph Software.

### How Device Catalogs Are Used

In SAS/GRAPH 9.1.3 software, when you specify the name of a graphics device driver with the `DEVICE=` or `TARGET=` options, or when prompted, the name you specify corresponds to an entry in a device catalog. Device catalog entries contain default characteristics used by the driver. For example, the parameters can determine details such as graph size, picture orientation, default colors, and whether to send the graphics output directly to a device or store it in a file. A device catalog entry can also be set up to control the attributes of a graphics stream file or to execute the necessary host commands to send graphics output directly to the device. This feature enables you to develop applications that do not require the end user to specify special `GOPTIONS` or issue host commands to produce hardcopy output. You can change the characteristics used by a driver either by modifying its entry in the device catalog, or by specifying `GOPTIONS` that override settings in the catalog.

For example, if you specify `DEVICE=HP7550`, the SAS/GRAPH procedure attempts to find an entry named HP7550 in available device catalogs. The parameters found in the entry (such as the default graph size, graph orientation, or where output is sent) are used in generating the graph. If you want to change the way the driver produces output, you can use the `GDEVICE` procedure to modify parameters in the catalog entry, or you can override them with a `GOPTIONS` statement. In general, if you want to change defaults for a single session or job, you can use a `GOPTIONS` statement. If you want to permanently change the default parameters used by a driver, you can create a new device entry or modify an existing one.

A device catalog supplied by SAS, `SASHELP.DEVICES`, is installed and made available as part of the overall SAS/GRAPH installation process. This catalog contains over 300 entries, covering each graphics device and model that SAS/GRAPH software supports. Individual users or groups can also create their own device catalogs. These are given the names `GDEVICE0.DEVICES`, `GDEVICE1.DEVICES` and so on, through `GDEVICE9.DEVICES`. When a driver name is specified in a SAS program, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation looks for the corresponding entry in `GDEVICE0.DEVICES`, `GDEVICE1.DEVICES`, etc. If the entry is not found in any of the user catalogs (or the catalogs do not exist), the supplied catalog, `SASHELP.DEVICES`, is searched.

### How and When to Modify Catalog Entries

If you need to make changes to a device entry, how you do so depends on whether the changes affect an individual user or most or all users at a site. If the change affects only one user, that user should create his or her own device catalog (`GDEVICE0.DEVICES`), copy the device entry from `SASHELP.DEVICES`, and make the changes to the entry in `GDEVICE0.DEVICES`. Note that `GDEVICE0.DEVICES`, being a "personal" catalog, is usually a different catalog for each user. If the modification affects a large number of users, the SAS Installation Representative can make modifications to an entry in `SASHELP.DEVICES`.

The following guidelines should be used when creating or modifying device entries:

- Only the SAS Installation Representative should add or modify entries in `SASHELP.DEVICES`. End users should not have update access to `SASHELP.DEVICES`. If individual users need to make modifications, they should create their own `GDEVICE0.DEVICES` catalog.
- If a catalog entry needs to be modified, create a new entry (with a different name) and modify the new entry. By renaming modified entries, users are ensured that the original entries supplied in the `SASHELP.DEVICES` catalog use default settings.
- Any options specified in a `GOPTIONS` statement override equivalent parameters in device catalogs. If a parameter needs to be changed only for a single session, it is probably easier to use a `GOPTIONS` statement than to create a new device entry.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate how to use device catalog parameters to create graphics stream files or to spool output directly to a hardcopy device. The examples first illustrate `GOPTIONS` and `FILENAME` or host statements that can be used to produce output, and then show how equivalent parameters can be specified in device entries, eliminating the need for the statements in the end users' programs. For complete details on managing device catalogs, refer to Chapter 25, "The GDEVICE Procedure," in the *SAS/GRAPH 9.1 Reference*.

### Creating a Graphics Stream File

Suppose you want to use the HP7550 driver to create a graphics stream file of HPGL commands to be transferred to another computer or application. To create the file using `GOPTIONS` and `FILENAME` statements, you can use the following statements:

```
/* define fileref for graphics stream file */
    filename gsasfile 'my.gsf.file';

/* specify device driver, fileref, mode, and record length */
    goptions dev=hp7550 gaccess=gsasfile gsfmode=replace gsflen=80;
```

You can achieve the same results by creating your own driver with the `GDEVICE` procedure and specifying host file options. The following display shows the Host File Options window for the modified device entry MYHP7550. You can enter these values using `GDEVICE` windows or with line-mode `GDEVICE` statements.

GDEVICE: Host File Options \_\_\_\_\_

Command ==>

Catalog: GDEVICE0.DEVICES      Entry: MYHP7550

Gaccess:  
SASGASTD>my.gsf.file

Gsfname: \_\_\_\_\_      Gsfmode: REPLACE      GSflen: 80

Trantab: \_\_\_\_\_      Devmap: \_\_\_\_\_      Devtype: DISK

Gprotocol: \_\_\_\_\_

Host file options:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\* Close file at end of driver or procedure termination  
 o Close file at end of each graph

—ZOOM —R —

Notice that the `DEVTYPE` field specifies `DISK`. This prevents the driver from sending output to the terminal. In addition, notice that the `GACCESS` field contains the complete name of the external file (without surrounding quotes). If the file does not already exist, you can have the driver allocate it by specifying the `DISP =` and `SPACE=` parameters in the Host File Options field.

### Spooling Directly to a Graphics Device

Suppose you want to use the HPLJ300 driver and send the output directly to a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer attached to an AGILE 6287 protocol converter. Your site has system software such as VPS that enables you to define the printer as a JES destination with a `SYSOUT` class of `A`, and a `DEST` of `HPPRINT`.

The following `GOPTIONS` and `FILENAME` statements are used to send graphics output to the LaserJet printer.

```
/* define fileref and JES parameters for graphics stream file */
filename gsasfile sysout=a dest=hpprint;

/* specify device driver, fileref for GSF, */
/* protocol converter, and record length */
goptions dev=hplj300 gaccess=gsasfile gprotocol=sasgpagl gsflen=128;
```

You can achieve the same results by creating your own driver with the `GDEVICE` procedure and specifying host file options. The following display shows the Host File Options window for the modified device entry MYHP300. You can enter these values using `GDEVICE` windows or with line-mode `GDEVICE` statements.

```

G D E V I C E :      H o s t   F i l e   O p t i o n s
C o m m a n d

          C a t a l o g :      G D E V I C E 0 . D E V I C E S

G a c c e s s : _____

G s f n a m e : _____      G s f m o d e :      R E
T r a n t a b : _____      D e v m a p :

G p r o t o c o l :      S A S G P A G L

H o s t   f i l e   o p t i o n s :
S Y S O U T = A   D E S T = H P P R I N T

_____

*   C l o s e   f i l e   a t   e n d   o f   d r i v e r   o r   p r o
o C l o s e   f i l e   a t   e n d   o f   e a c h   g r a p h

_____ Z O O M _____ R

```

When the preceding parameters are specified, SAS/GRAPH software dynamically allocates a `SYSOUT` file with a `SYSOUT` class of `A` and a destination of `HPPRINT`, and directs the driver output to that file.

**Note:** Because a temporary spool file is dynamically allocated, it is not necessary to specify `GACCESS=GSASFILE`.

## Part 4 — Device HELP Screens

The device HELP screens for SAS/GRAPH 9.1.3 contain information on setting up system parameters required to use certain drivers and how to use SAS/Graph device drivers. If you are using SAS 9.1.3 Foundation interactively on a full-screen terminal, you can also obtain details on using graphics devices by first making sure that you have enabled `PMENUS`, and then selecting Help from the pulldown menu. Then, select SAS System Help, then Help on SAS Software Products, and then SAS/GRAPH. On the “About SAS/GRAPH” screen, select Using SAS/GRAPH Software and then Using Graphics Devices.

## Part 5 — JAVAIMG – Server-side Java Graphs

In SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, you can now generate graphs rendered with SAS/GRAPH Java applets on MVS. For more information, see the section on JAVAIMG in the *SAS/GRAPH Companion*.

The following sample SAS program generates an HTML file (`sampzos.html`) and JAVAIMG chart (`sampzos.png`) and writes them to HFS files. The HTML file with embedded image can be viewed with a Web browser.

**Note:** Before running this example, please see “Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform” on page 46.

```
ods listing close;

ods html path='/u/mvmdir/public_html'
         gpath='/u/mvmdir/public_html' (url=none)
         body='sampzos.html';

goptions device=javaimg;

title1 "JAVAIMG Example on z/OS";

proc gchart data=sashelp.class;
  vbar age /
  name='sampzos';
run;

quit;

ods html close;
```

To view this sample HTML file, enter the following address in your Web browser (where *zoshost* is the address of the z/OS machine):

```
http://zoshost/~mvmdir/sampzos.html
```



## Appendix P — Post-Installation Configuration for SAS Integration Technologies Software

If you received SAS Integration Technologies software and have completed the installation of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, you have successfully installed the SAS server components of SAS Integration Technologies software. The **SAS Client-Side Components CDs** that are included in your software order contain SAS Integration Technologies client components and documentation for SAS Integration Technologies software.

The SAS Integration Technologies documentation can be installed from the **SAS Client-Side Components CD** or it can be viewed from

<http://support.sas.com/documentation/onlinedoc/inttech>. Before beginning the actual configuration, read the “Technical Overview” section from the **SAS Client-Side Components CD** or from the previously mentioned Web site to determine the needed configuration path.



## Appendix Q — Installing SAS/IntrNet Software

SAS/IntrNet software includes both server and client components. If SAS/IntrNet software is licensed and the installation instructions described earlier in this document have been completed, then the SAS server components of SAS/IntrNet software have already been installed. The **SAS Client-Side Components CD** included with your SAS package contains the client components and additional product documentation.

### Prerequisites

SAS/IntrNet software has the following prerequisites:

- SAS/IntrNet requires that SAS be configured for communication with TCP/IP. Please ensure that the steps in the section “System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP” on page 18 have been reviewed and completed.
- A Web server must be available if you intend to use the SAS/IntrNet CGI Tools. You will need administrative access to this server or support from your Web administrator.

### Documentation

SAS/IntrNet product documentation can be found on the **SAS Client-Side Components CD**. It is recommended that you install this documentation on your local Web server. The documentation will be required to customize SAS/IntrNet for your site after you complete the configuration described in this appendix. You can also find the latest version of the SAS/IntrNet product documentation online at

<http://support.sas.com/documentation/onlinedoc/intrnet/>

The “What's New” page at this Web site will list any recent changes to the product or the documentation.

### CGI Tools

SAS/IntrNet CGI Tools include the Application Dispatcher and htmSQL. The CGI Tools are installed and configured as described in the following sections.

#### 1. Install the CGI Tools on the Web server

The Web server components are available in the SAS/IntrNet CGI Tools for the Web server package. If your Web server is not on the z/OS system go to the **SAS Client-Side Components CD** to find the package and instructions appropriate for your Web server system.

If your z/OS system hosts your Web server, you can use the CGI Tools tar archive found in the data set (&prefix.WEB.TAR). You will need to copy the member to the hierarchical file system using the OPUT command from a TSO prompt as shown in the following example:

```
OPUT '&prefix.WEB.TAR(WEBSRV)' '/u/local/tmp/websrv.tar' BINARY
```

**Note:** A different destination path can be chosen in place of the user defined directory /u/local/tmp/, but the directory path should already exist.

Use the following commands from the UNIX System Services environment to extract the contents of the tar archive:

```
cd /u/local/tmp <use the path from the OPUT command above>
```

```
tar -xvof websrv.tar <use the filename from the OPUT command above>
```

Follow the instructions found in the readme.txt file you just unpacked to install the CGI Tools.

### **Testing the Application Broker**

To make sure that the Application Broker was installed correctly and can access its configuration file, point your Web browser to this URL:

- Windows  
`http://your_server/scripts/broker.exe?`
- Other host  
`http://your_server/cgi-bin/broker?`

Replace *your\_server* with the name of the Web server. The URL path might also need to be changed if you installed the Application Broker to a different directory. If the Application Broker is working, the response will be similar to the following:

## **SAS/IntrNet Application Dispatcher**

### **Application Broker Version 9.1 (Build *nnnn*)**

- [Application Dispatcher Administration](#)
- [SAS/IntrNet Samples](#)
- [SAS/IntrNet Documentation](#) - requires Internet access

If you do not receive this status page you must debug your Web server installation before continuing. Verify that your Web server is enabled for CGI execution in the directory where you installed the Application Broker.

### **Using htmSQL**

If you want to use the hmtSQL CGI Tool and this is the first time you are installing htmSQL on this system, you should review the configuration instructions in your SAS/IntrNet product documentation. You must review `htmSQL.cfg` file to verify that the options are suitable for your system. You must also set up a data source definition file using the DSDEF utility contained in the `sasweb/IntrNet9/tools` directory and have access to a SAS/SHARE server.

## 2. Configure a Default Application Dispatcher Service

A **default** Application Dispatcher service must be defined to run the sample programs included with SAS/IntrNet. An Application Dispatcher service is a collection of one or more server tasks that will execute SAS/IntrNet programs. The default service described below is a simple server service with one server task that may be used to execute samples and is a convenient way to begin developing your own SAS/IntrNet applications. It is not required, but it is recommended for most installations.

A TCP/IP port (number) or service definition (name) must be reserved for your default service before you create the service. Note that TCP/IP ports or service definitions are not the same as Application Dispatcher service definitions. A single Application Dispatcher service may use one, many, or no TCP/IP ports or service definitions. For the default service definition you will need just one TCP/IP port. Consult your system administrator or check your TCP/IP services definition file (ETC.SERVICES and also /etc/services) to find an available port.

Services are configured by a batch job found the &prefix.CNTL (INETCFG) data set that was created during the first step of your SAS installation. To create a default service:

1. Edit the parameter file, member INETEDTP in the &prefix.CNTL data set, as described in the following steps. The INETEDTP member contains the parameters necessary for creating a service. Editing instructions are provided in the comments in INETEDTP, and the default values should be changed to the values required for the service being created.
2. Specify the name of the Application Dispatcher service that you are creating. Locate the line containing ISVC= and verify the service name is DEFAULT.
3. Specify the default service is a socket service. Uncomment the %SOCKETTYP line containing ISVCTYP=. Make sure the %POOLTYP line is commented out by placing an asterisk (\*) in the first column.
4. Specify the TCP/IP port number or service name for the server. Change the value 5001 to the correct port number or service name for your server.
5. Review and update any other remaining parameters if necessary.
  - ☐ ADMINPW=YOURPASSWORD  
Uncomment and supply password to enable administrator password for this service. Do not leave a blank between ADMINPW= and the supplied password. An administrator password is not required and can be added later if you chose to skip this step.
  - ☐ I\$SAMPLE=&prefix.SAMPLE  
Location of SAS/IntrNet sample program PDS.
  - ☐ I\$SAMPSIO=&prefix.SAMPSIO  
Location of SAS/IntrNet sample SAS Library.
  - ☐ INETENTRY=SAS  
Set to installation default entry.
  - ☐ INETWORK=500,200  
Primary and secondary allocations for the PROC WORK Data set.
6. Save and close INETEDTP.

7. Edit the INETCFG job to verify the job header information and the name of the service you are defining. The service name in the JCL should match the value you supplied for ISVC in INETEDTP. If you make changes, be sure to save them. Do NOT change SASEDITP to INETEDTP. This filename refers to your original SAS installation parameters file.
8. Submit the INETCFG job for processing. The INETCFG job will submit another job (INETCFGGA). Verify that both jobs complete with a return code of 0. If the jobs complete successfully, the data sets and members necessary for running your service.

If the INETCFG job fails, examine the messages and SYSPRINT output for error messages. If the following message is received:

```
ERROR: THIS REPLACEMENT CAUSES RESULT TO EXCEED OUTPUT LRECL
```

You might have supplied a pathname in one of the INETEDTP parameters that is too long. Try shortening this pathname and rerun INETCFG.

**Note:** Before running INETCFG again, any data sets created by the previous failure of INETCFG must be deleted. To find these data sets, look at the &prefix determined by the original SAS installation.

*For example, if SAS was installed with the &prefix name SYS.SAS and the failed INETCFG was trying to create the DEFAULT service, then delete all data sets beginning with the name &prefix SYS.SAS.WEB.DEFAULT before running INETCFG again.*

9. The configuration utility creates a server root in a partitioned data set (PDS) named &prefix.WEB.DEFAULT, where &prefix is the data set &prefix that was supplied during the SAS installation. The PDS contains any JCL procedures and server startup code required for starting the service.

Verify that the following members have been created:

- ❑ APSTRTn  
contains the JCL necessary to run the corresponding @APSTXn member as a started task. This member should be moved to a started task library and enable it as started tasks.
- ❑ @APSTXn  
contains the SAS code that invokes the server. The JCL calls this file in the corresponding APSTRTn member. These SAS programs must remain in the PDS where they were created.

In addition to the server root PDS, the configuration utility creates an empty PDS named &prefix.WEB.DEFAULT.TDIR. The default service will use a member of this PDS named TBLIB1 as its scratch SAS data library.

10. The permissions for the data sets created above must be modified so the server can write to them as necessary. To modify the permissions, create a special security profile that applies to all the data sets in this service (&prefix.WEB.DEFAULT.\*). The security system profile should also grant write access to the user ID of the Application Server.

11. The Application Broker must know about this service so that you can access it. Edit the Application Broker configuration file (named `broker.cfg`) on your Web server and customize the default service definition block for your installation. The service definition block for a socket service might look like this:

```
# This service contains one server (port 5800) on yourserv.yyy.com.
SocketService default "Reuse existing session"
    ServiceAdmin "Your Name"
    ServiceAdminMail "yourname@yyy.com"
    Server yourserv.yyy.com
    Port 5800
    FullDuplex    True
```

### 3. Starting, Stopping and Removing the Default Service

#### **Starting the Service**

As stated above, the `APSTRN` file for the default Application Dispatcher service should be moved from the file `&prefix.WEB.DEFAULT` to a started task library and enabled as a started task. To start the default service, issue a `START` command from the system console.

After initialization, the Application Server will pause. This indicates the server has begun waiting for Application Dispatcher requests from the Application Broker, and everything is functioning properly.

#### **Testing the Service**

1. To make sure that the service was installed and started correctly, point your Web browser to this URL:

- Windows  
`http://your_server/scripts/broker.exe?`
- Other host  
`http://your_server/cgi-bin/broker?`

Replace `your_server` with the name of the Web server. The URL path might also need to be changed if you installed the Application Broker to a different directory. If the Application Broker is working, you receive a page similar to the following:

# SAS/IntrNet Application Dispatcher

## Application Broker Version 9.1 (Build *nnnn*)

- [Application Dispatcher Administration](#)
- [SAS/IntrNet Samples](#)
- [SAS/IntrNet Documentation](#) - requires Internet access

2. Click on the Application Dispatcher Administration link to see if the Application Broker can read the Application Broker configuration file. The response looks like

### Application Dispatcher Services

- SocketService [default](#)

---

#### SocketService default - Default Service

[ping](#), [status](#), [stop](#), admin password:

#### Default Application Dispatcher Service

Administrator: *Your name here*, [you@your.address](#)

Defined servers and ports:

- server *your.server.com*, port 5800, weight 1 ([ping](#), [status](#), [stop](#))

3. Ping the Application Server by clicking on the ping link in the Application Dispatcher Services page. If the server is working correctly, the response is

**Ping. The Application Server *your.server.com:5800* is functioning properly.**

4. To complete installation testing, return to the main Application Dispatcher page from step 1 and select the **SAS/IntrNet Samples** hyperlink. Try some of the Application Dispatcher samples to verify the complete installation.

## Stopping the Service

Services can be stopped from a Web browser. The URL will depend on the platform and path where your Application Broker is installed. For typical installs, the URL to stop the default service will be one of the following:

- OS/390 and UNIX  
`http://your_server/cgi-bin/broker?_service=default&_program=stop`
- Windows  
`http://your_server/scripts/broker.exe?_service=default&_program=stop`

The name of the Web server must be specified in place of *your\_server*. A different URL path might need to be chosen depending on the path chosen when the Application Broker was installed.

## Removing the Service

The default service can be removed by deleting or renaming all data sets beginning with the name &prefix.WEB.DEFAULT. You should also remove any APSTRn files associated with this service that you copied to a started task library.

## 4. Configure Additional Services

This appendix only describes how to configure a simple default Application Dispatcher service. There are many reasons you may want to configure additional services, including segregating applications by security or performance requirements and implementing more scalable servers. See the “Using Services” section of the SAS/IntrNet Application Dispatcher documentation (either online at [http://support.sas.com/onlinedoc/913/docMainpage.jsp?\\_topic=dispatch.hlp/main\\_contents.htm](http://support.sas.com/onlinedoc/913/docMainpage.jsp?_topic=dispatch.hlp/main_contents.htm), or on the **SAS Client-Side Components CD** included with your software) for information on configuring additional services, including pool services.

## Java Tools

SAS/IntrNet includes the SAS/CONNECT Driver for Java. This component allows access to SAS from Java clients. See the SAS/IntrNet product documentation for information on building Java applications with this component.



# Appendix R - Configuring SAS IT Resource Management

## ***SAS IT Resource Management Functionality***

SAS IT Resource Management is a data management and presentation software package used to access, manage, integrate, aggregate, and analyze large quantities of performance data about many IT resources, such as hardware, operating system software, networks, Web servers, databases, and applications. This IT performance data is generated by the logging mechanisms that are inherent to IT resources or that are created by the Enterprise Systems Management tools that are employed to manage the IT infrastructure.

SAS IT Resource Management 2.7 has both client and server components. The server software is required to process, reduce, and/or update the data in a performance data warehouse (PDB) located on your system. The client software is required only if you want to access a performance data warehouse on a remote server system from a client PC platform. SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 has server components and uses IT Resource Management enhanced SAS 9 client components as the user interface to the solution.

SAS IT Resource Management Server runs on Microsoft Windows NT Server, z/OS, and selected UNIX operating systems.

SAS IT Resource Management Client runs on Microsoft Windows platforms supported by SAS 9.1.3.

**Note:** *SAS IT Resource Management was formerly known as IT Service Vision (ITSV). Some documentation and references may still use the former name.*

## **SAS IT Resource Management Integration with Other SAS IT Management Solutions**

SAS IT Resource Management 2.7 is the pre-requisite release for SAS IT Service Level Management and SAS IT Charge Management. Future releases of IT Service Level Management and SAS IT Charge Management will include the enhancements necessary to be compatible with SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1.

## **SAS IT Resource Management Configuration**

SAS IT Resource Management now ships with both the 2.7 and 3.1.1 versions. If you are installing SAS IT Resource Management 2.7, you should follow the procedures in the “Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 2.7” section which follows to complete your installation. Otherwise, for IT Resource Management 3.1.1 follow the procedures in the “Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1” section on page 140 to complete your ITRM installation.

## ***Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 2.7***

### **Migration Considerations**

If you have an existing SAS IT Resource Management installation and want to migrate from SAS Version 8 to SAS 9, refer to the migration information in the directory \SASROOT\cpe\itsvdocs\convert89.htm in your SAS IT Resource Management Client installation. Additional information may be found online at <http://support.sas.com/itrm>. Migration information may also be found online at <http://www.sas.com/itsvconv>.

If you have modified your SITELIB library, you will need to save a copy of it so that you can merge it into the new SITELIB library. Please see the instructions relating to “Site Library Considerations” on page 138.

## Installation Customizations

*Note: If you are installing SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1, you should follow the procedures in the “Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1” section on page 140 to complete your ITRM installation.*

SAS IT Resource Management will be installed into a set of libraries prefixed `hlq.ITRM`, where `hlq` is the high-level qualifier described by either `NEW-PREFIX`, `FINAL-PREFIX`, or `STAGED-PREFIX` depending on the `INSTALL ACTION` chosen to install the SAS System.

## Installation Checklist

The following steps must be performed and reviewed in sequence:

1. Installing or Upgrading MXG (Recommended)
2. Customization of SAS IT Resource Management Server (Required)
3. Site Library Considerations (Review Required)
4. Starting SAS IT Resource Management
5. Considerations following a Staged Installation (Action C)
6. Considerations Following Delete SAS Staging Libraries (Action E)

## Installing or Upgrading MXG (Recommended)

If you do not already have MXG installed, or you have MXG installed but it is older than the supplied version, you should install it now:

1. Locate the ITRM.CPMISC PDS member CMXGINST.
2. Copy it to a location suitable for editing and submission.
3. Edit it according to the comments within the member.
4. Add a Jobcard and submit it.

A copy of the JCL is included below.

If you have MXG installed but it is older than the supplied version, we recommend that you install the supplied version. The newer version solves all reported problems, and could provide support for new data records. Installing it now will protect you from APARs and new versions of data records. Follow the instructions in the ITRM.CPMISC PDS member CMXGINST.

Enter the location of the MXG installation data set names into the ITRMEDTP job, as detailed below. This action tells SAS IT Resource Management where to get the latest MXG definitions.

If you update your MXG installation in the future without applying any SAS IT Resource Management maintenance, you should update all of your %CPSTART macros to reflect the latest installed version of MXG. Typically, they are referenced in batch jobs that you have created to collect and process SMF-type data. They are also referenced in any customized AUTOEXECs you may have written based on the CMAUTOEX member.

Here is the skeleton JCL that can be found in the z/OS ITRM.CPMISC PDS member CMXGINST. Verify the following:

- The correct VOLSER for the supplied MXG cartridge (normally of the form OSISnn)
- The names for the newly created data sets are correct (most customers prefer to install MXG into data set names that reflect the MXG version).
- Their corresponding UNIT and VOLSER specifications, and that the correct SAS procedure for your site is executed in the FORMATS Jobstep.

```

//STEP1      EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD DUMMY /* IF POINTED TO SYSOUT, PLAN FOR LOTS OF OUTPUT.
//*          /* ** VERIFY VOLSER OF SUPPLIED MXG TAPE BELOW **
//SYSIN      DD DSN=TAPE.MXG.SOURCLIB,DISP=SHR,VOL=SER=OSISnn, <==VERIFY
//          UNIT=TAPE,DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=32720),
//          LABEL=(,NL,EXPDT=98000)
//*
//*** change the DSN= and VOL=SER= below to an appropriate value for
//*** your installation. Also, verify them in step FORMATS below.
//SYSUT2     DD DSN=MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB,VOL=SER=XXXXXX,          <==VERIFY
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG),
//          UNIT=3380,DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=23440),
//          SPACE=(CYL,(280,5,1199))
//*** or, if using 3390 disks, comment out the above two lines
//*** and uncomment the two below
//*          UNIT=3390,DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=27920),
//*          SPACE=(CYL,(230,5,1199))
//*
//*****
//*** ALLOCATE AND LOAD MXG FORMAT LIBRARY - check the CONFIG=,
//*** the SOURCLIB DSN=, and the LIBRARY DSN= and VOL=SER= parms.
//*****
//*
//FORMATS    EXEC SAS,ENTRY=SAS,
//          CONFIG='MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB(CONFIG)'          <==VERIFY
//SASLOG     DD SYSOUT=*
//SASLIST    DD SYSOUT=*
//SOURCLIB   DD DSN=MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB,DISP=SHR          <==VERIFY
//*
//*** change the DSN= and VOL=SER= below to an appropriate value for
//*** your installation
//*
//LIBRARY    DD DSN=MXG.MXG.FORMATS,VOL=SER=XXXXXX,          <==VERIFY
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG),SPACE=(CYL,(1,1)),
//          UNIT=3380,DCB=(DSORG=PS,RECFM=FS,LRECL=23040,BLKSIZE=23040)
//*** or if using 3390 disks, comment out the above line
//*** and uncomment the line below
//*          UNIT=3390,DCB=(DSORG=PS,RECFM=FS,LRECL=27648,BLKSIZE=27648)
//SYSIN      DD *
//          %INCLUDE SOURCLIB(FORMATS);
//

```

If this is your first MXG installation, you must also create a data set for storing copies of MXG source code that you modify. Allocate a PDS similar in structure (but smaller) to the SOURCLIB allocation above. This PDS is referred to as MXG.USERID.SOURCLIB in both the MXG and the SAS IT Resource Management documentation. Detailed MXG information can be found in the CHANGES member of the MXG SOURCLIB PDS created in the first job step above.

The INSTALL member of the MXG SOURCLIB PDS should also be reviewed for important information regarding the setting of various IMAC members – especially IMACSPIN, whose setting can play a critical role in the treatment of SMF data.

For existing MXG installations, user modifications should be reviewed against the newly installed version. In a few cases, the base MXG member may have changed, requiring the user modification to be re-engineered onto a copy of the newly installed base member.

## Customization of SAS IT Resource Management Server (Required)

These are the steps that are required to complete an installation of SAS IT Resource Management when doing Actions A, B, or C.

### 1. ITRMEDTP

Edit the member ITRMEDTP in the CNTL PDS to supply the name of the MXG.SOURCLIB and MXG.USERID.SOURCLIB PDSs, the name of the MXG format library, and other information according to the instructions in that member.

### 2. ITRMPOST

Submit the CNTL PDS member ITRMPOST. This customizes the SAS IT Resource Management Server with the parameters specified in ITRMEDTP.

You may receive the following message:

**WARNING:** *Since library hlq.ITRM.PDBDEMO.DETAIL was already allocated, any options specified on the LIBNAME statement were not able to be processed.*

As a result, the ITRMPOST job may end with a Condition Code 4. Disregard this message.

## Site Library Considerations (Review Required)

If this is your first installation of SAS IT Resource Management, the following step is not relevant and can be skipped.

If this is not your first installation of SAS IT Resource Management, you must consider the maintenance of the SITELIB library. In the ITRM.CPMISC PDS just installed, locate a member called CPSITEUP. This code will merge your old, production SITELIB library with your newly installed version. Details about running this code follow.

When a new version or release of SAS IT Resource Management is installed, a new SITELIB library is created. This ensures that you are able to access any SITELIB updates that may have been made in the product. An example of this would be new options on the z/OS interactive menuing system. If you didn't access the new SITELIB.TSKINFO data set you would never see the new menus or options.

If you have an existing production SITELIB library that contains site-wide options or data sets that you want to make available to the new release of SAS IT Resource Management, locate the CPSITEUP member and review its contents.

The CPSITEUP code refers to three SITELIB libraries:

- The newly installed SITELIB, referred to as NEWSITE.
- The current, production/default SITELIB (whether it is the previously installed SITELIB or a subsequently re-located version), referred to as OLDSITE.
- PRODSITE, which is used in referring to your chosen location for the production SITELIB for the newly installed release of SAS IT Resource Management. This can be the newly installed SITELIB library, the current production/default SITELIB library, or a new pre-allocated library.

Before running CPSITEUP, change or verify their locations as follows:

- Verify that NEWSITE is already set to the install path of SITELIB for this installation.
- Change OLDSITE to point to your current production/default SITELIB.
- Change PRODSITE to point to a directory or library from which you want to run this release of SAS IT Resource Management. This could be the same location as OLDSITE or NEWSITE, in which case those libraries will be overwritten, or it could be a new pre-allocated library.

Run the CPSITEUP code, following the instructions at the top of the code.

If you have decided to use a SITELIB library whose location is not that of the newly installed SITELIB, CPSITEUP will also update the pointer held in PGMLIB so that your chosen SITELIB becomes the new default SITELIB. You will not need to perform the task described in the following section, “Modifying the Pointer to the Default SITELIB Library.”

Other tools that are available for modifying site-wide options are the macros CPPDBOPT and CPHDAY, both of which are documented in the SAS IT Resource Management Macro Reference.

### **Modifying the Pointer to the Default SITELIB Library**

A SITELIB library (z/OS) or directory and its files (PC or UNIX) must be writeable by the SAS IT Resource Management administrator and readable by all other SAS IT Resource Management software users.

When SAS IT Resource Management is started (using the %CPSTART macro), you have the option of specifying the SITELIB= parameter. This is not required and is usually not specified. If it is specified, the SITELIB= value is used as the SITELIB library for (only) that invocation. Otherwise, the default SITELIB library will be used. This default library’s name is stored in the PGMLIB library and is set at installation to be the name of the newly installed SITELIB library. If you need to change that default, submit the following program.

**Note:** Update-access to the PGMLIB library and its components is required. ENCODING is a two byte representation as part of the installed data set name and cannot be changed.

```
LIBNAME PGMLIB 'hlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.PGMLIB' DISP=OLD;
DATA PGMLIB.CPSITE;
CPSITE="name.of.new-or-updated.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB";
RUN;
```

## **Starting SAS IT Resource Management**

### **From the TSO READY Prompt**

To start SAS and SAS IT Resource Management from the TSO READY prompt, follow these steps:

1. Use the CMCPE CLIST found in the CNTL PDS (or in the PDS referenced by the CPCLLIB= parm in the ITRMEDTP member) created for you by the SAS installation.
2. This will run the AUTOEXEC (CMAUTOEX, stored in the ITRM.CPMISC PDS) which will allocate the correct libraries and demo PDB.
3. If you leave the SAS IT Resource Management application and remain in SAS, enter the ITRM command to restart it. (Note that either ITSV or CPE are still valid alternatives.)

### **From Within the SAS System**

To start SAS IT Resource Management from within the SAS System, follow one of these methods:

- Use the ITRM command (or ITSV or CPE) or submit a %CPSTART() macro from the Program Editor.

You will then be prompted to enter the location of the SAS IT Resource Management root. This will be the prefix of your PGMLIB library.

- Use the AUTOEXEC that the SAS installation created for you in your ITRM.CPMISC PDS called CMAUTOEX. It contains a %CPSTART macro invocation to allocate the correct root and activate the sample PDB that was created at install time.

## Considerations following a Staged Installation (Action C)

### Merging Staging Libraries to Production

If a site selects Action C, then Action D (STAGE-TO-FINAL) is required after site-specific testing is completed. In addition, the site-specific manual actions described below must be followed:

**Note:** *ENCODING* represents a two byte representation that is part of the installed data set.

Run the following program to copy your stagedhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.PGMLIB to prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.PGMLIB:

```
LIBNAME SPGMLIB 'stagedhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.PGMLIB' DISP=SHR;
LIBNAME PGMLIB 'prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.PGMLIB' DISP=OLD;
PROC COPY IN=SPGMLIB OUT=PGMLIB;
RUN;
```

Note that the prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.PGMLIB library stores the default location of the SITELIB library, which is currently set to the stagedhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB library. Append the program below to the SAS code mentioned above to replace the name of the stagedhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB library with the one used in production (prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB).

```
DATA PGMLIB.CPSITE;
CPSITE='prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB';
RUN;
```

If you have SAS 9, but you did not have SAS IT Resource Management already installed, run the following program to copy your stagedhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB to prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB:

```
LIBNAME SSITELIB 'stagedhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB' DISP=SHR;
LIBNAME SITELIB 'prodhlq.<ENCODING>.ITRM.SITELIB' DISP=OLD;
PROC COPY IN=SSITELIB OUT=SITELIB;
RUN;
```

## Considerations Following Delete SAS Staging Libraries (Action E)

After executing an Action E, to remove the Staging Libraries, do the following:

Submit the CNTL PDS member ITREPOST. This customizes the CNTL PDS CMCPE member with the prodhlq.values.

## Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1

**Important:** *With the availability of the 311IS04 hot fix, it is important to read that hot fix's installation instructions in combination with these instructions. The method by which SAS IT Resource Management metadata is deployed to the SAS Metadata Server has changed. In summary, if you have an empty ITMS repository and have not deployed any metadata, you will be instructed to execute the deployITRM\_zos.sh script with DACTION=initialize. If you happen to have deployed at least some metadata or you have an existing ITMS repository, you will be instructed to execute the same script with DACTION=hotfix to migrate it. There is a point in the instructions below which will instruct you to stop and follow the hot fix installation instructions, and then return to these.*

SAS IT Resource Management 2.7 and SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 are both current releases of this solution. Even though both releases of SAS IT Resource Management run on SAS 9.1.3, the difference in the

software releases is that SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 runs on and fully leverages the SAS 9.1.3 architecture to create an IT data mart.

**Note:** For z/OS installations, Action A must be used to install SAS IT Resource Management Server 3.1.1. Also, SAS IT Resource Management jobs will require a minimum region size of 576M or 589824K.

In order for the newly installed IT Resource Management 3.1.1 software to function properly, manual and post-install configuration steps must be completed. If you are planning on only using SAS IT Resource Management 2.7, you should NOT perform these modifications and only follow the procedures in the previous section entitled "Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 2.7" on page 135.

This section addresses required modifications for server-, client- and mid-tier installations. Part of the server-tier installation requires that SAS Management Console, a client-tier component, be installed first. For information on installing this and other client-tier components, refer to Chapter 6 of the *SAS 9.1.3 Intelligence Platform: Installation Guide* located at

<http://support.sas.com/documentation/configuration/913admin.html>. Use either the "Advanced Installation" to selectively install client-tier components from your plan file or, if you do not have a plan file yet, use "Software Index" to select products from the CDs included in your package. You can choose to install just SAS Management Console now and come back to install the rest of your client-tier components after the server installation is complete, or go ahead and install all your client-tier components now.

## SAS IT Resource Management Documentation

For the latest documentation information about SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1, please look at the SAS IT Resource Management Documentation page, <http://support.sas.com/documentation/onlinedoc/itsv/>, specifically the *Introduction to SAS IT Resource Management 3.1* that introduces the concepts and facilities of release 3.1.

## Installation Checklist

The following steps must be performed and reviewed in sequence.

### Server-Tier Modifications

1. Migration Considerations
2. Installing or Upgrading MXG (Recommended)
3. Ensure that the SVC is Installed
4. Ensure UNIX File System Components are Installed
5. Ensure that the Java Platform is Configured for Use with SAS Software
6. Modify the JREOPTIONS
7. Create a Custom Autoexec File
8. Additional Modifications to the SAS Configuration Files Required for IT Resource Management 3.1.1
9. Verify RACF OMVS Segment and ASSIZEMAX Settings
10. Complete the Pre-installation Tasks for the SAS Servers
11. Configure the SAS Servers
12. Edit the *configuration.properties* File
13. Run the *deploy\_IA.sh* Script
14. Verify the Results of Running the Script
15. Optimizing Memory Allocation for the SAS Metadata Server
16. Create and Perform Some of the Steps in the *instructions.html* File

## 17. Update Default Authorizations

### **Client-Tier Modifications**

1. Tuning the SAS Data Integration Studio Invocation
2. Apply Client-Tier Hot Fixes

### **Mid-Tier Modifications**

1. Configure SAS Web Report Studio for use with SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1
2. Create a New Subdirectory Off the Top-Level in WebDAV
3. Add `/sasdav/ITMS` as an Available Base Path
4. Add the ITMS Repository to Information Services for SAS Web Report Studio
5. Add the ITMS Repository to Information Services for the SAS Information Delivery Portal
6. Update the Repository Root Folder Properties
7. Update Your Web Application Server Policy File
8. Edit the `WebReportStudioProperties.xml` File
9. Restart the SAS Services Application and Your Web Application Server
10. Apply Mid-Tier Hot Fixes

### **Server-Tier Modifications**

#### **Migration Considerations**

To migrate your SAS IT Resource Management 2.7 PDB to a SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 IT data mart, follow the instructions provided in *SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1: Migration Documentation* available from <http://support.sas.com/itrm>. If you have not already done so, it is recommended that you apply the latest hot fix available for SAS IT Resource Management 2.7.

#### **Installing or Upgrading MXG (Recommended)**

If you do not already have MXG installed, or have MXG installed but it is older than the supplied version, you should install it now:

1. Locate the ITRM.CPMISC PDS member CMXGINST.
2. Copy it to a location suitable for editing and submission.
3. Edit it according to the comments within the member.
4. Add a JOBCARD and submit it.

A copy of the JCL is included below.

If you have MXG installed but it is older than the supplied version, we recommend that you install the supplied version. The newer version solves all reported problems, and could provide support for new data records. Installing it now will protect you from APARs and new versions of data records. Follow the instructions in the ITRM.CPMISC PDS member CMXGINST.

Enter the location of the MXG installation data set names into the configuration file, as detailed below. This action tells SAS IT Resource Management where to get the latest MXG definitions.

If you update your MXG installation in the future without applying any SAS IT Resource Management maintenance, you should update the configuration file to reflect the latest installed version of MXG.

The following sample JCL can be found in the ITRM.CPMISC PDS member CXGINST. Verify the following:

- The correct VOLSER for the supplied MXG cartridge (normally of the form OSISnn)
- The names for the newly created data sets are correct (most customers prefer to install MXG into data set names that reflect the MXG version)
- Their corresponding UNIT and VOLSER specifications, and that the correct SAS procedure for your site is executed in the FORMATS Jobstep

```
//STEP1      EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE, PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD DUMMY /* IF POINTED TO SYSOUT, PLAN FOR LOTS OF OUTPUT.
//*          /* ** VERIFY VOLSER OF SUPPLIED MXG TAPE BELOW **
//SYSIN      DD DSN=TAPE.MXG.SOURCLIB, DISP=SHR, VOL=SER=OSISnn, <==VERIFY
//          UNIT=TAPE, DCB= (RECFM=FB, LRECL=80, BLKSIZE=32720) ,
//          LABEL= (, NL, EXPDT=98000)
//*
//*** change the DSN= and VOL=SER= below to an appropriate value for
//*** your installation. Also, verify them in step FORMATS below.
//SYSUT2     DD DSN=MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB, VOL=SER=XXXXXX,          <==VERIFY
//          DISP= (NEW, CATLG) ,
//          UNIT=3380, DCB= (RECFM=FB, LRECL=80, BLKSIZE=23440) ,
//          SPACE= (CYL, (280, 5, 1199))
//*** or, if using 3390 disks, comment out the above two lines
//*** and uncomment the two below
//*          UNIT=3390, DCB= (RECFM=FB, LRECL=80, BLKSIZE=27920) ,
//*          SPACE= (CYL, (230, 5, 1199))
//*
//*****
//*** ALLOCATE AND LOAD MXG FORMAT LIBRARY - check the CONFIG=,
//*** the SOURCLIB DSN=, and the LIBRARY DSN= and VOL=SER= parms.
//*****
//*
//FORMATS    EXEC SAS, ENTRY=SAS,
//          CONFIG= 'MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB (CONFIG) '          <==VERIFY
//SASLOG      DD SYSOUT=*
//SASLIST     DD SYSOUT=*
//SOURCLIB    DD DSN=MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB, DISP=SHR          <==VERIFY
//*
//*** change the DSN= and VOL=SER= below to an appropriate value for
//*** your installation
//*
//LIBRARY     DD DSN=MXG.MXG.FORMATS, VOL=SER=XXXXXX,          <==VERIFY
//          DISP= (NEW, CATLG) , SPACE= (CYL, (1, 1)) ,
//          UNIT=3380, DCB= (DSORG=PS, RECFM=FS, LRECL=23040, BLKSIZE=23040)
//*** or if using 3390 disks, comment out the above line
//*** and uncomment the line below
//*          UNIT=3390, DCB= (DSORG=PS, RECFM=FS, LRECL=27648, BLKSIZE=27648)
//SYSIN       DD *
```

```
%INCLUDE SOURCLIB(FORMATS) ;  
//
```

If this is your first MXG installation, you must also create a data set for storing copies of MXG source code that you modify. Allocate a PDS similar in structure (but smaller) to the SOURCLIB allocation above. This PDS is referred to as MXG.USERID.SOURCLIB in both the MXG and the SAS IT Resource Management documentation. Detailed MXG information can be found in the CHANGES member of the MXG SOURCLIB PDS created in the first job step above.

The INSTALL member of the MXG SOURCLIB PDS should also be reviewed for important information regarding the setting of various IMAC members – especially IMACSPIN, whose setting can play a critical role in the treatment of SMF data.

For existing MXG installations, user modifications should be reviewed against the newly installed version. In a few cases, the base MXG member may have changed, requiring the user modification to be re-engineered onto a copy of the newly installed base member.

### ***Ensure that the SVC is Installed***

Ensure that the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC is installed, since SAS IT Resource Management works with the SAS/Integration Technologies Object Spawner. See “Installing the SAS 9.1.3 SVC Routine” on page 36 for details.

### ***Ensure UNIX File System Components are Installed***

SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 includes BI Server components that need to be installed into the UNIX file system. Because this depends on the installation of the BI server, you must first ensure that the instructions included in the section "Installing UNIX File System Components" on page 41 of this manual have been completed. Once completed, you should have created and mounted an HFS (or z/FS) data set, and you should have run the USSUNTAR utility job (and related USUTxxxx jobs) to create folders and files within that UNIX file system.

The installation of the UNIX File System Components requires a minimum of 1 GB space for initial metadata deployment and related installation data. This estimate includes additional space for future hot fixes, system updates, and similar processes. This estimate only assumes an initial deployment of the SMF adapter. If other adapters are deployed, an additional 0.5–1 GB of space should be allocated.

This estimate also assumes inclusion of a small number of average-sized IT data marts. If several IT data marts, or larger IT data marts, will be defined, it is highly recommended that an additional 0.5–1 GB of space be allocated to allow for growth in the metadata repositories that define the metadata required for those IT data marts.

Note that these figures do not include the space required for the physical data in the IT data marts. The space allocation of the physical data is solely dependent on how much raw data is processed, as well as the retention period of the data, number of aggregations, and other factors. The physical space requirements for IT data marts in SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 are similar or slightly larger than the allocations of PDBs (Performance Data Bases) in SAS IT Resource Management 2.6 or 2.7, so sites that are migrating from those releases can use their previous allocations as a rough guide.

The physical data in the IT data marts may be allocated in traditional z/OS space or in a UNIX-based file system. If a UNIX-based file system is used, it is recommended that the space for the IT data mart physical data be defined in a separate file system from the installation image and metadata repositories.

### ***Ensure that the Java Platform is Configured for Use with SAS Software***

You must also ensure that the instructions included in the section "Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform" on page 46 of this manual have been completed. Once completed, you should have verified the required release of IBM Java Software Developer Kit (by visiting <http://support.sas.com/thirdpartysupport>) and set the TKMVSENV options and JREOPTIONS SAS Foundation option appropriately. Please note that it is the 32-bit SDK that SAS supports on z/OS, not the 64-bit version.

## Modify the JREOPTIONS

SAS 9.1.3 default installation references the JREOPTIONS SAS System option in two configuration files, TSOW0 and BATW0. Before making any modifications that impact the existing JREOPTIONS set in your installation, it is recommended that you follow these steps before proceeding to make any modifications to the TSOW0 and BATW0 configuration files:

1. Start SAS 9 or prepare JCL to invoke SAS 9.
2. From a SAS Program Editor or in batch (preferably because it requires at least 250 MB of memory), submit the following code:

```
PROC OPTIONS OPTION=JREOPTIONS VALUE DEFINE;
RUN;
PROC JAVAINFO;
RUN;
```

3. Check the SAS Log for the value of java.version and java.vm.version and the settings of the SAS System JREOPTIONS option. If PROC JAVAINFO fails, ensure that the section "Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform" on page 46 of this manual is completed successfully. Note that the java.version and java.vm.version should have a value of "1.4.2" as follows:

```
java.version = 1.4.2
java.vm.version = 1.4.2
```

4. Make sure that the CTRANSLOC SAS System option in the TSOW0 and BATW0 configuration files points to the SAS/C executable library recorded in your pre-installation checklist.
5. Use the CAPS OFF command in your ISPF Edit session to ensure that mixed case is preserved when adding the SAS options below to the TSW0 and BATW0 configuration files.

The JREOPTIONS setting also needs to include options specific to SAS IT Resource Management, as follows:

1. At the beginning of the list of options (immediately *after* the opening parenthesis), add the following:

```
-DentityExpansionLimit=10000000
```

(Note that the preceding number is 10 million—1 followed by 7 zeros)

2. Modify the `sas.app.class.dirs` directive so that

```
<directory-structure-root>/itmscore
```

appears at the start of the list of jar folders, where *directory-structure-root* is the path used when the UNIX file system components were installed in Chapter 1.

3. At the end of the list, add the following directive *before* the closing parenthesis:

```
-Dsas.javaobj.experimental=no -Xmx256m
```

Remember that no part of the jreoptions string must go beyond column 72; that there must be a non-blank character in column 72; that continuations must start in column 1 of the next line; and that method must be continued for as many lines as needed.

Below is an example of what the JREOPTIONS SAS configuration option may look after making the modifications mentioned above:

```
JREOPTIONS=(-DentityExpansionLimit=10000000 -Djava.security.policy=/usr/
/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SAS.SAS913.TS1M3.ITRMW0/MVS/sas.policy -Djava
.class.path=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SAS.SAS913.TS1M3.ITRMW0/hostc
m/sas.launcher.jar -Djava.system.class.loader=com.sas.app.AppClassLoader
-Dsas.app.class.dirs=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SAS.SAS913.TS1M3.ITR
MW0/itmscore/;/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SAS.SAS913.TS1M3.ITRMW0/avd
obj/;/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SDC.SAS900.TS1M3.ITRMW0/hostcm/ -Dsa
s.ext.config=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SAS.SAS913.TS1M3.ITRMW0/MVS/
sas.java.ext.config -DPFS_TEMPLATE=/usr/lpp/SAS/SAS_9.1.3SP4.ITRM/SAS.SA
S913.TS1M3.ITRMW0/hostcm/qrpfstpt.xml -Dsas.javaobj.experimental=no -Xmx
256m)
```

**Note:** The directory structure root will depend on your site installation. For more information about setting your JREOPTION, refer to the section "Configuring SAS Software for Use with the Java Platform" on page 46 of this manual.

### Create a Custom Autoexec File

Create an autoexec file to allow MXG to be correctly initialized. This file could be a sequential file, or a member of a PDS, and is the same file that is referenced by the AUTOEXEC configuration option detailed below. Add the following line to the file:

```
%RMMXGINI;
```

### Additional Modifications to the SAS Configuration Files Required for IT Resource Management 3.1.1

There are other configuration options that SAS IT Resource Management requires that should be made at this time:

- File allocation options

Add the following options to set up default file allocation options for primary space, secondary space, device, allocation units, blocksize and dynamic allocation of sort work space (you should also review their settings to ensure that they meet your operating system's requirements):

```
FILESPPRI=20
FILESPPSEC=50
FILEDEV=DISK
FILEUNIT=CYLS
BLKSIZE (DASD) =HALF
DYNALLOC
```

- Format error option

Add the following option to disable error messages caused by inadvertently missing formats:

```
NOFMterr
```

- Format catalog search order

Add the following option to enable the correct format catalog search sequence:

```
FMTSEARCH=(ADMIN.ITMS SASHELP.ITMS_FORMATS WORK LIBRARY)
```

- National language compatibility

If you execute SAS in any locale other than English, the following option should be specified, especially when using MXG:

```
NLSCOMPATMODE
```

However, because there are some tasks in the subsequent setup and configuration of the SAS servers that require the default, `NONLSCOMPATMODE`, to be set, it is recommended that you do not set this option until the servers are completely initialized. Alternatively, the `NLSCOMPATMODE` option could be added as an override in the JCL that is used to execute the batch jobs, instead of adding it to the configuration file.

- MXG environment variables

Set the following environment variables after the `FMTSEARCH` option to locate the installation paths of your MXG installation:

```
SET='MXGSRC (<custom> <sourclib>)'
SET='MXGFMT<formatlib>'
```

Where `<custom>` is the path to your MXG custom source library, sometimes referred to as `MXG.USERID.SOURCLIB`, without quotes; `<sourclib>` is the path to your MXG source library, sometimes referred to as `MXG.MXG.SOURCLIB`, without quotes; and `<formatlib>` is the path to your MXG format library, sometimes referred to as `MXG.MXG.FORMATS`, without quotes. For example:

```
SET='MXGSRC (MYUSER.CUSTOM.SOURCLIB PROD.MXG.SOURCLIB)'
SET='MXGFMT PROD.MXG.FORMATS'
```

**Note:** *If you are an existing MXG customer, it may be preferable to create this MXG custom source library as a new PDS, independent from any existing custom PDS that you may already have. This will give you more control over the ITRM-specific customizations that you may not want active in your production MXG jobs.*

- AUTOEXEC

Add the following option to indicate the name of an autoexec file that you created in the previous step:

```
AUTOEXEC="<path-to-your-ITRM-autoexec-file>"
```

### Verify RACF OMVS Segment and ASSIZEMAX Settings

When a SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 job is executed from SAS Data Integration Studio to run on a z/OS Workspace Server, the RACF profile of **ALL** user IDs accessing the z/OS Workspace Server must have a RACF OMVS segment and be allowed an address space size of at least 576 MB. This is specified in the user's RACF OMVS segment `ASSIZEMAX` parameter as [603979776](#) (bytes), or in the system-wide setting of `MAXASSIZE` defined in `SYS1.PARMLIB (BPXPRMxx)`.

## Complete the Pre-installation Tasks for the SAS Servers

Review the instructions in Appendix 2 of the *SAS 9.1.3 Intelligence Platform: Installation Guide* located at <http://support.sas.com/documentation/configuration/913admin.html>. It is divided into two main sections, "Pre-installation Tasks" and "Configuring the SAS Servers on z/OS." Use the instructions in the first section as the basis to create the following:

- Create a RACF group and several user accounts (remember that this installation of the SAS 9.1.3 Intelligence Platform will be used solely for use with SAS IT Resource Management).
- Select started task names.
- Assign reserved port numbers.
- Select the configuration directory (referred to as CONFIG\_DIR).
- Define the SAS and SAS/C executable libraries to be program-controlled.

It is important to ensure that all the port numbers are assigned and reserved correctly, otherwise, unpredictable errors can occur when the Object Spawner is started. An example of one such error message is:

ERROR: The TCP/IP bind call for the server A5DHKRUN.AV000004 listen port failed. The text associated with that error is (Permission is denied).

## Configure the SAS Servers

The second section of Appendix 2 copies a server configuration PAX file to the UNIX System Services (USS) /tmp directory and extracts the contents of that file into the configuration directory (CONFIG\_DIR). Because there is also a SAS IT Resource Management PAX file that must be copied as well, follow these instructions instead.

The COPYIA and I9COPYIA jobs copy server configuration PAX files to the UNIX System Services (USS) /tmp directory and extract the contents of these files into a configuration directory that you specify. This extraction process creates the directory structure and some of the files that are needed for the SAS Intelligence Platform server deployment.

The user ID under which you must run the COPYIA and I9COPYIA jobs is the SAS Installer (sas) that you created during pre-installation. The jobs to be edited and submitted can be found in &prefix.W0.SRVCNTL.

To edit and submit these jobs, complete these steps:

1. Starting around line 47 of COPYIA, provide values for the following environment variables:
  - a. Set CONFIG\_DIR to the configuration directory where the Intelligent Architecture directory structure will be created (for example, /usr/lpp/SAS/SAS\_9.1/BI).
  - b. Set LEVEL to the name of the level which will contain the Application Server context (for example, LEV1).
  - c. Set APPNAME to the directory name that corresponds to the SAS Application Server (for example, SASMain).
2. Submit COPYIA.
3. To verify that the job ran successfully, complete these steps:
  - a. Verify that the COPYIA job's return code was 0.
  - b. View the output from the COPYIA1, UNTAR, and SHELLOUT steps for possible problems.
4. Starting around line 47 of I9COPYIA, provide values for the following environment variables:
  - a. Set CONFIG\_DIR to the same configuration directory used in the COPYIA job above.
  - b. Set LEVEL to the same value used in the COPYIA job above.
  - c. Set APPNAME to the same value used in the COPYIA job above.
5. Submit I9COPYIA.

6. To verify that the job ran successfully, complete these steps:
  - a. Verify that the I9COPYIA job's return code was 0.
  - b. View the output from the COPYIA1, UNTAR, and SHELLOUT steps for possible problems.

### **Edit the `configuration.properties` File**

Invoke the USS shell (or **rlogin** to your z/OS host).

**Note:** You must be logged on as the SAS installer (*sas*), which you specified on your pre-installation checklist.

Edit the file **`configuration.properties`** file to add the values that are required by the `deploy_IA.sh` script:

1. Change directories (using the **cd** command) to the directory `CONFIG_DIR/Utilities/zOS_config`. (`CONFIG_DIR` is the same configuration directory used in the COPYIA job above).
2. Edit the `configuration.properties` file by entering the appropriate values from your pre-installation checklists.

### **Run the `deploy_IA.sh` Script**

Run the script **`deploy_IA.sh`** to configure your SAS servers and spawners:

1. Change directories (using the **cd** command) to the directory `CONFIG_DIR/Utilities/zOs_config`. (`CONFIG_DIR` is the same configuration directory used in the COPYIA job above).
2. Run the script using the following command:  
`./deploy_IA.sh -properties configuration.properties`

**Note:** The **`deploy_IA.sh`** script outputs to stdout. If you prefer to capture its output in a file, use the following command:

`./deploy_IA.sh -properties configuration.properties >file 2>&1`  
 where *file* is the pathname of the output file.

The script generates messages as it runs, either on the screen or to the log file if you chose to capture its output. Review the messages for any errors. The following message should appear when the `deploy_IA.sh` script finishes successfully:

```
*** Intelligence Architecture deployment process complete.***
```

3. Record the location of the `instructions.html` file, which should appear in the messages following the message mentioned above. This file will be used in the section "Create and Perform Some of the Steps in the *instructions.html* File" on page150.

### **Verify the Results of Running the Script**

Check the **`&prefix.W0.SRV*`** data sets for the following customized server files (**`&prefix`** is the high-level qualifier to which SAS was installed):

- `&prefix.W0.SRVCFG`: SAS configuration files
- `&prefix.W0.SRVCLIST`: SAS CLISTs
- `&prefix.W0.SRVENV`: SAS TKMVSENV files
- `&prefix.W0.SRVPARM`: SAS object spawner parameter files

- `&prefix.W0.SRVPROC`: SAS started procedure JCL
- `&prefix.W0.SRVREXX`: SAS REXX execs

The SAS Metadata Server address space (started task) should have available a region size of between 1100 and 1300 MB, although user exits installed at your site may restrict this amount with or without warning. In the fifth item of the above list, the `SRVPROC` data set, look for the member that contains the started task procedure for the SAS Metadata Server, normally a member whose fourth through sixth characters are "OMR". Modify the region size within that JCL accordingly.

In the last item, the `SRVREXX` data set, edit the `SASRX` member and review the setting of the `TKMVSENV` option on or around line 24. If it looks like this:

```
TKMVSENV ( )                                /* TKMVSENV                                */
```

then it needs to be edited to read:

```
TKMVSENV ( '&prefix.TKMVSENV(TKMVSENV)' ) /* TKMVSENV                                */
```

Notice there is no "W0" or other encoding value in this data set.

### ***Optimizing Memory Allocation for the SAS Metadata Server***

The memory allocation defaults for the SAS 9.1.3 Metadata Server on z/OS need to be updated for use by SAS IT Resource Management. A special consideration zap is available to customers, or an alternative technique to reduce memory consumption is available. These are documented in SAS Note SN-31647 at the following Web site:

<http://support.sas.com/kb/31/647.html>

Please refer to that SAS Note for further details.

### ***Create and Perform Some of the Steps in the `instructions.html` File***

In earlier versions of this document, you were instructed to follow all the steps described with the `instructions.html` file. With the availability of the 311IS03 (and later) hot fixes, all the instructions pertaining to the deployment of SAS IT Resource Management metadata are no longer necessary, even though those instructions still appear there. The definition and configuration of the SAS servers are still valid. The following information has been corrected to reflect which instructions you should follow on the understanding that the 311IS03 (and later) hot fixes have been installed.

This section describes the use of SAS Management Console to perform configuration updates. This client-tier component must be installed at this point. Refer to the instructions on page 141 in the last paragraph of the section entitled "Configuring SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1" for details on how to install SAS Management Console.

The **`deploy_IA.sh`** script produces an **`instructions.html`** file just like the one that the SAS Configuration Wizard produces on Windows and UNIX systems. This HTML file explains the manual configuration steps that you must still perform.

**Note:** *The `instructions.html` file can be found in the `CONFIG_DIR` directory which you specified previously.*

If you do not have a browser installed on z/OS, you will need to copy your `instructions.html` file to a Windows or UNIX system where they can be viewed.

Follow the steps listed in the `instructions.html` file up to and including the creation of the ITMS repository. Create the ITMS repository according to the instructions and then stop.

At this point, you should refer to [SAS Note 30753](#) which lists a series of Server-Tier hot fixes, special consideration zap, and installation actions required for SAS IT Resource Management to function properly. Then, return to this document to continue with the next step, "Update Default Authorizations."

## Update Default Authorizations

During job execution, SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 creates information maps. In order to successfully accomplish this task, you should modify the Default Access Template for the SAS Metadata Repository (SMR) user(s) or group(s) that will be creating and submitting jobs for SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1. The following steps describe how to make this change.

### Create IT Resource Management User(s) or Group(s)

**Note:** User(s) or group(s) should *ONLY* be created in the Foundation repository. Do *NOT* create user(s) or group(s) in the ITMS repository.

1. Launch the SAS Management Console and ensure that you are connected to the Foundation repository of your metadata server.
2. The instructions in this step refer to an “ITRM Users” group. This is a group defined in the Foundation SMR that simplifies the management of authorizations for many users and/or groups. Modifications to the Default Authorizations are applied to all of the users and groups that are members of “ITRM Users”. If you would prefer to have your SMR Users organized in a group like this, so that permissions can be managed and modified for a single entity, you can create a group as follows:
  - a. Select **User Manager**.
  - b. Right-click and select **New→Group** from the pop-up dialog.
  - c. On the **General** tab, supply a unique name such as `ITRM Users`.
  - d. On the **Members** tab, select the users who will be part of this group, and use the right arrow widget between the two panes to add them to the group.
  - e. Click **OK** to save the group.

### Update Default Authorizations for User(s) and Group(s)

**Note:** Ensure that the following steps have been performed in *BOTH* the Foundation and the ITMS repositories.

1. If the SAS Management Console is not still available from the previous step, start it and ensure that you are connected to the Foundation repository of your metadata server.
2. Select the Authorization Manager and expand the Access Control Templates item.
3. Select **Default ACT**.
4. Right-click and select **Properties** from the resulting pop-up dialog.
5. Select the **Users and Permissions** tab.
6. If the list of available names does not include the user or group whose Default ACT is to be modified, follow these steps to add it:
  - a. Click **Add...**
  - b. For each user or group that you want to add to the Selected Identities, select the item in the list of Available Identities and then use the right arrow between the panes to add the item to the Selected Identities. It is here that you should select the “ITRM Users” group if it was created in the previous section.
  - c. Click **OK**.
7. Set the following permissions for each Identity that you want to update (and also ensure that none have **Deny** selected on the Authorization tab): ReadMetadata, WriteMetadata, Read, and Delete.
8. After all necessary items have been modified, click **OK**.
9. Using the SAS Management Console, connect to the ITMS repository of your metadata server and repeat steps 2-8.

## Client-Tier Modifications

### Tuning the SAS Data Integration Studio Invocation

In order for the SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 client software to function properly, you need to modify the options that are passed to the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) when SAS Data Integration Studio is started.

The file to modify is `<SAS Home Directory>\SASETLStudio\9.1\etlstudio.ini`. Before you continue, please create **a backup copy** of this file. Edit the original file by adding the following options to the beginning of the list immediately following `CommandLineArgs=`:

```
-Xmx1024m -Xms128m -Xss1m
```

After you complete the updates, your `etlstudio.ini` `CommandLineArgs=` line should appear similar to the following:

```
CommandLineArgs=-Xmx1024m -Xms128m -Xss1m
-Djava.system.class.loader=com.sas.app.AppClassLoader
-Djava.security.auth.login.config=security/login.config
-Djava.security.policy=security/auth.policy
-Dsas.app.class.dirs="C:\Program Files\SAS\SASETLStudio\9.1"
-Dsas.app.class.path=sas.dbuilder.app.jar; .
-Dsas.ext.config=sas.java.ext.config -cp sas.launcher.jar
com.sas.wadmin.application.TheAppWA
```

### Apply Client-Tier Hot Fixes

You should apply all the SAS Data Integration Studio, SAS Enterprise Guide, and SAS Information Map Studio hot fixes currently available from SAS Technical Support. The hot fixes and the instructions for applying them can be found at the Technical Support Hot Fixes Web page, located at [http://ftp.sas.com/techsup/download/hotfix/op\\_home.html](http://ftp.sas.com/techsup/download/hotfix/op_home.html).

## Mid-Tier Modifications

### Configure SAS Web Report Studio for use with SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1

A unique instance of SAS Web Report Studio configured for use with the ITMS dependent repository is required for use with SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1. The configuration changes that are required for SAS IT Resource Management should be made after SAS Web Report Studio has been installed and a default configuration has been completed. If you have not already installed and configured SAS Web Report Studio, please stop and return to this document after completing that task. Additionally, please ensure that your SAS Metadata Server is running before continuing.

### Create a New Subdirectory Off the Top-Level in WebDAV

1. Access the xythosadmin GUI (`http://<nodename.domain.com>:<port>/xythosadmin`) using the Administrator user ID and password.
2. Select **File System** then click **Find Top-Level Directory**.
3. Select **sasdav** and then click **Add New Sub-Directory**.
4. For the name, specify *ITMS* and change the Quota to *Unlimited*.
5. Click **Create Directory**. You should now see ITMS as a subdirectory of *sasdav*.
6. Click on the **Permissions** icon to set user permissions.
7. Click **Search for Users and Groups**, type *administrator* in the Contains field, and select **OK**.
8. Select **SAS Web Administrator** and then **OK**.

9. For the row corresponding to SAS Web Administrator, set all permissions to **Yes**.
10. Save your changes.

The following three steps require interaction with the SAS Metadata Server. To facilitate this, launch the SAS Management Console on your Mid-Tier Server.

### **Add /sasdav/ITMS as an Available Base Path**

1. Confirm that the Foundation repository is the current, active repository.
2. Expand Server Manager.
3. Select **HTTP DAV Server**.
4. Right-click and then select **Properties** from the resulting popup dialog.
5. Select the **Options** tab and then click the **New...** button. Supply /sasdav/ITMS as the Base Path. Be sure to select the **Supports WebDAV** checkbox. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK**.

### **Add the ITMS Repository to Information Services for SAS Web Report Studio**

In order for SAS Web Report Studio to find content in a repository other than Foundation, you must add the ITMS repository, which is a dependent repository, to the Platform Information Service within Query and Reporting services.

1. On the mid-tier server, launch the SAS Management Console and connect to the Foundation repository on the Data Server as the administrative unrestricted user (sasadm, for example).
2. Expand the Foundation Services Manager.
3. Expand Query and Reporting.
4. Expand BIP Core Services.
5. Select **Platform Information Service** to highlight it and then select **File** → **Properties** from the pull down menu.
6. Select the **Service Configuration** tab.
7. Select the **Edit Configuration...** button.
8. Select the **Repositories** tab.
9. Select **New...** to add the ITMS repository.
10. Supply the following information:
  - Protocol: omi
  - Name: ITMS
  - Description: <optional, enter your description here>
  - Host: Fully qualified nodename hosting the SAS Metadata Server containing the ITMS repository (ex. nodename.domain.company.com)
  - Port: The port the SAS Metadata Server is listening on (default: 8561)
  - Domain: The authentication domain for the SAS Metadata Server connection (default: DefaultAuth)
  - Base: ITMS
  - Proxy: No value needed by default
  - **Auto-Connect** checkbox: Selected
  - **Secure** checkbox: By default not selected, only select if encryption is supported and the connection to the repository will be made using a secure protocol.
 Select **OK**.
11. Select **OK** twice to save changes.

### **Add the ITMS Repository to Information Services for the SAS Information Delivery Portal**

In order for the SAS Information Delivery Portal to find content in a repository other than Foundation, you must add the ITMS repository, which is a dependent repository, to the BIP Information Service. This must

be done for both the BIP Local Service OMR service in the ID Portal Local Services item and the BIP Remote Services OMR service in the Remote Services item.

1. On the mid-tier server, launch the SAS Management Console and connect to the Foundation repository on the data server as the administrative unrestricted user (`sasadm`, for example).
2. Expand the Foundation Services Manager.
3. Expand ID Portal Local Services.
4. Expand BIP Local Services OMR.
5. Select **BIP Information Service** to highlight it and then select **File** → **Properties** from the pull down menu.
6. Select the **Service Configuration** tab.
7. Select the **Edit Configuration** button.
8. Select the **Repositories** tab.
9. Select **New** to add the ITMS repository.
10. Supply the following information:
  - Protocol: omi
  - Name: ITMS
  - Description: <optional, enter your description here>
  - Host: Fully qualified nodename hosting the SAS Metadata Server containing the ITMS repository (ex. nodename.domain.company.com)
  - Port: The port the SAS Metadata Server is listening on (default: 8561)
  - Domain: The authentication domain for the SAS Metadata Server connection (default: DefaultAuth)
  - Base: ITMS
  - Proxy: No value needed by default
  - **Auto-Connect** checkbox: Selected
  - **Secure** checkbox: By default not selected, only select if encryption is supported and the connection to the repository will be made using a secure protocol.

Select **OK**.

11. Select **OK** twice to save changes.

Repeat steps 3 through 11 above, expanding Remote Services for step 3 and BIP Remote Services OMR for step 4.

### ***Update the Repository Root Folder Properties***

The repository root folder, as specified during the installation of SAS Web Report Studio (and output to the file `<SAS Web Report Studio Install Folder>\wrs.config`), must be configured in order for SAS Web Report Studio to function properly. The default repository root folder is `BIP Tree`. For SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 this should be changed so that `ITRMSoftwareTree` is configured as the root instead. To make this change, perform the following steps:

1. On the mid-tier server, launch the SAS Management Console and connect to the ITMS repository. Note that you can connect to Foundation and then use the **Repository** dropdown to switch to the ITMS repository. You should log in as the administrative super user (`sasadm`, for example).
2. Expand the BI Manager.
3. Select the **ITRMSoftwareTree** folder to highlight it and then select **File** → **Properties** from the pull-down menu.

4. Select the **Content Mapping** tab.

There should already be a WebDAV content server defined with a format of `http://<dataserver.domain:port>`, for example, `http://dataserver.sas.com:80`. You can use this for SAS Web Report Studio content as well. Just select it from the **Server** drop-down. If you need to add additional content servers, use Server Manager in SAS Management Console while connected to the Foundation repository.

5. Select the Content Base Path.

Base paths specify the URLs that are available on the content server. Earlier in these instructions you defined a new subdirectory off the top-level in WebDAV (`/sasdav/ITMS`). You should now use that as the base path. You can use this base path by selecting it from the **Base Path** drop-down.

If you deploy more than one instance of SAS Web Report Studio (for example, one deployment for each dependent repository), you should define a different base path for each instance so the data for each deployment is maintained separately. To add additional base paths for a server, use Server Manager in the SAS Management Console. After they have been added, they will be available for selection in the **Base Path** drop-down.

6. If you are using Xythos to manage your WebDAV server, you will need to specify the SAS Web Administrator user ID and password. This information can be found in your Pre-installation Checklists.

7. Select **OK** to save changes.

You will receive a dialog box that states, "Content Server, Base Path, and User ID must be specified for the root folder to be functional. Continue Anyway?" Select **Yes**.

### **Update Your Web Application Server Policy File**

If applicable, ensure that the appropriate `sas.wrs.*.policy` file has been included in your Web application server's policy file.

### **Edit the WebReportStudioProperties.xml File**

The `WebReportStudioProperties.xml` file can be located as follows, depending on the host on which your mid-tier resides.

#### **UNIX**

The `WebReportStudioProperties.xml` file that must be modified in this step can be found in the `SASWebReportStudio/WEB-INF` directory in your Web application server's deployment directory. For example, if you are using Jakarta Tomcat as your Web application server and have installed it to `<install-location>/jakarta-tomcat-4.1.18` then you should find the file in `<install-location>/jakarta-tomcat-4.1.18/webapps/SASWebReportStudio/WEB-INF`.

#### **Windows**

The `WebReportStudioProperties.xml` file that must be modified in this step can be found in the `SASWebReportStudio\WEB-INF` directory in your Web application server's deployment directory. For example, if you are using Jakarta Tomcat as your Web application server and have installed it to `<install-drive>/Tomcat4.1` then you should find the file in `<install-drive>\Tomcat4.1\webapps\SASWebReportStudio\WEB-INF`.

**Note:** *Element content that is underlined should be modified to the value shown below in bold.*

Change

```
<repository>Foundation</repository>

to

<repository>ITMS</repository>
```

Change the content of the `citation.model.repository` element so that it appears as follows:

```
<citation.model.repository>
  <path>
    <!-- default value: / -->
    <root>/</root>
    <!-- Note, these are appended to <root> -->
    <!-- default value: ReportStudio -->
    <citationweb>ITReportStudio</citationweb>
    <!-- default value: ReportStudio/BannerImages -->
    <bannerImages>ITReportStudio/BannerImages</bannerImages>
    <!-- Info maps are searched from this location down -->
    <!-- default value: ReportStudio/Maps -->
    <maps>ITDataMartTree</maps>
    <!-- the "root" for shared files (reports subdir goes here). -->
    <!-- default value: ReportStudio/Shared -->
    <shared>ITReportStudio/Shared</shared>
    <!-- the "root" for a user's files; -->
    <!-- username as a subdirectory is created here, -->
    <!-- (reports subdir goes under that). -->
    <!-- default value: ReportStudio/Users -->
    <users>ITReportStudio/Users</users>
    <!-- the subdir created in the shared/user area for reports -->
    <subdirReports>Reports</subdirReports>
    <!-- the subdir created in the shared/user area for queries -->
    <subdirQueries>Queries</subdirQueries>
  </path>
  <!-- Repositories often have more than 1 "root folder", -->
  <!-- this parameter indicates which should be used if -->
  <!-- there are more than one. -->
  <rootFolderName> ITRMSoftwareTree </rootFolderName>
</citation.model.repository>
```

Save these configuration changes.

**Note:** *If SAS Web Report Studio is reconfigured and redeployed, you must repeat the steps in this section to reapply the changes to the `WebReportStudioProperties.xml`. More information about the administrative files for SAS Web Report Studio can be found in the SAS 9.1.3 Intelligence Platform Web Application Administration Guide.*

### **Restart the SAS Services Application and Your Web Application Server**

Your configuration changes to the mid-tier are now complete. In order for these modifications to become effective, you should restart the SAS Services Application and your Web application server. To do this correctly, you should first stop the Web application server and then the SAS Services Application. When ready to restart you should start the SAS Services Application first, followed by the Web application server.

## Apply Mid-Tier Hot Fixes

You should apply the SAS Web Report Studio hot fix currently available from SAS Technical Support. The hot fix and the instructions for applying it can be found at the Technical Support Hot Fixes Web page, located at [http://ftp.sas.com/techsup/download/hotfix/op\\_home.html](http://ftp.sas.com/techsup/download/hotfix/op_home.html).

## Extract and Deploy Functionality for z/OS

### Overview

SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 allows you to extract an IT data mart from an existing SAS IT Resource Management 3.1 ITMS repository on z/OS and deploy it to the newly created release 3.1.1 ITMS repository. This process copies and upgrades the metadata that describes the IT data mart and its contents. It does **NOT** copy the data associated with the IT data mart. Support of this functionality is based on the Extract and Deploy process running on a Windows machine and connecting to the metadata servers on your z/OS host. Note that while User Defined Formulas are copied from your source ITMS repository (release 3.1) to the target ITMS repository (release 3.1.1), supplied formulas that have been modified are not copied. If you modified a SAS IT Resource Management 3.1 supplied Formula, you must manually make the same modification to the same Formula associated with your new SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 installation.

The new SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 ITMS repository that will serve as the target for deployment of the extracted IT data mart should have the Adapter(s) used by that IT data mart already deployed. This should have been accomplished using the `instructions.html` document when the installation of the new release was performed.

The SAS Metadata Server for both the preexisting SAS IT Resource Management 3.1 and the new SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 installations should be running.

The Windows machine that will host the Extract and Deploy processing should have both the recommended 1.4.2\_09 Java Development Kit and the current version of the SAS Management Console installed.

Finally, it is also recommended that a backup of both the SAS IT Resource Management 3.1 and SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 configuration directories be made prior to working with the Extract/Deploy functionality. To do this you should stop each SAS Metadata Server process and use a file system copy or archive utility (such as tar, pax, zip, etc.) to copy the directory. Although the directory locations will be specific to your site, an example of each may be:

```
/usr/lpp/SAS/ITRM31 and
/usr/lpp/SAS/ITRM311
```

### Locating the Extract/Deploy Archive File

After installing, deploying, and configuring your SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 software, you should access the `SASITMSCoreComponents/Utilities` subdirectory located in the deployment configuration utilities directory. The path will be relative to your configuration directory, and is as follows:

```
<SAS-Config-Directory>/Lev1/Utilities/SASITMSCoreComponents/Utilities.
```

Your location may be similar to:

```
/usr/local/SAS/ITRM/Lev1/Utilities/SASITMSCoreComponents/Utilities
```

In this directory you should find an archive file called `ExtractDeploy.jar`.

### Transfer the Extract/Deploy Archive File to Windows

As stated in the overview, in order to use the Extract/Deploy functionality you will need to first transfer the archive file to your Windows machine. This copy operation should be performed as a binary file transfer using file transfer software such as FTP.

For the purpose of this documentation, we'll assume that the location you have transferred the file to is `C:\Temp`.

## Extracting the Contents of the Extract/Deploy Archive File

Once you have transferred the archive file to your Windows machine, you must extract the contents of the archive before you can use the functionality. Since this archive file was created using the jar command, you can use this same command to extract the contents from it. From a Windows command prompt, change directory to C:\Temp and use the following suggested syntax. This syntax assumes that an environment variable called JAVA\_HOME has been previously defined. For example:

```
%JAVA_HOME%\bin\jar -xf ExtractDeploy.jar
```

If this environment variable has not been defined you will need to supply the explicit path to your installed JDK in place of “%JAVA\_HOME%” above.

After submitting the command you will have a new directory called ExtractDeploy containing the extract and deploy functionality.

## Using the Extract and Deploy Functionality

This section provides an overview of the usage of the extract and deploy functionality. It should be noted that this functionality only supports working with a single data mart at a time. Once you extract an IT data mart, you should not extract another one until you have deployed the original. Subsequent extractions overwrite the files necessary for deployment, so you cannot extract several IT data marts expecting to be able to deploy them simultaneously.

Each of the scripts listed below in steps 1-6 should be invoked from a Windows command line. Because there are command line arguments to be provided, you should NOT double click on any of the .bat files to submit them.

### Required Local Installation Modifications

Prior to using the Extract and Deploy functionality, you must modify two files so that the command scripts will function with your installation. Navigate to C:\Temp\ExtractDeploy\Utilities\metadata and edit the files deploy.bat and extract.bat. In each file you will find the following string:

```
$EDIT:PATH-TO-SMC-ROOT$
```

You should replace this entire string (including the leading and trailing dollar signs [\$]) with the path to your SAS Management Console installation. Assuming that your installation drive is C:, this would be something similar to C:\Program Files\SAS\SASManagementConsole\9.1 .

In each of the preceding files there is a line that contains an option to turn on debugging. By default this line is commented out, but you may remove the ‘rem’ comment statement in the event you have the need to receive more information from the script as it is running.

### Description of Run Order

Before discussing how to extract or deploy an IT data mart, you should understand the sequence of steps to be taken. They are listed in their run order below.

1. ExtractITMSProperty  
Unless you make changes to your source repository after making your first ITMSProperty extraction, this is a one-time operation.
2. ExtractITMSFormula  
Similar to step 1 in that this is a one-time operation UNLESS you add User Defined formulas after performing this extraction operation.
3. ExtractITDataMart
4. DeployITMSProperty  
A one-time operation unless the analogous Extract job was run again.
5. DeployITMSFormula  
A one-time operation unless the analogous Extract job was run again.
6. DeployITDataMart

## Details of Run Steps

The following section details each of the steps to be run. For each script it is necessary to provide a userid and password so that a connection to the metadata server may be established. Because metadata updates will be occurring, it is necessary to supply the credentials for a userid that has administrative rights for the metadata server in question. Please note that there are also comments regarding errors that might be seen for steps 2 and 5.

**Note:** *Line breaks in the commands below are to improve readability only – your submitted commands should not contain any line breaks.*

### Extract Processing

Extract processing takes place against the source metadata server. This should be the SAS Metadata Server associated with the pre-existing SAS IT Resource Management 3.1 installation.

#### 1. ExtractITMSProperty.bat

Syntax:

```
ExtractITMSProperty.bat [srcVersion] [metaServerName]
                        [metaServerPort] [metaUser]
                        [metaPass]
```

Example:

```
ExtractITMSProperty.bat 3.1 myserver 8561 sasadm Pass1
```

#### 2. ExtractITMSFormula.bat

Syntax:

```
ExtractITMSFormula.bat [srcVersion] [metaServerName]
                       [metaServerPort] [metaUser]
                       [metaPass]
```

Example:

```
ExtractITMSFormula.bat 3.1 myserver 8561 sasadm Pass1
```

**Note:** *If you do not have any User Defined formulas in your source ITMS repository, then you will receive an error message indicating such when submitting this script.*

#### 3. ExtractITDataMart.bat

Syntax:

```
ExtractITDataMart.bat [version] [DataMartName]
                     [metaServerName] [metaServerPort]
                     [metaUser] [metaPass]
```

Example:

```
ExtractITDataMart.bat 3.1 MyDataMart myserver 8561
                    sasadm Pass1
```

**Note:** *If the IT data mart name contains blanks, you should enclose it in double quotes.*

Example:

```
ExtractITDataMart.bat 3.1 "My Data Mart" myserver 8561
                    sasadm Pass1
```

## Deploy Processing

Deploy processing takes place against the target metadata server. This should be the SAS Metadata Server associated with the new installation of SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1.

### 4. DeployITMSProperty.bat

Syntax:

```
DeployITMSProperty.bat [srcVersion] [trgVersion]
                        [metaServerName] [metaServerPort]
                        [metaUser] [metaPass]
```

Example:

```
DeployITMSProperty.bat 3.1 3.1.1 myserver 8561 sasadm Pass1
```

### 5. DeployITMSFormula.bat

Syntax:

```
DeployITMSFormula.bat [srcVersion] [trgVersion]
                      [metaServerName] [metaServerPort]
                      [metaUser] [metaPass]
```

Example:

```
DeployITMSFormula.bat 3.1 3.1.1 myserver 8561 sasadm Pass1
```

### 6. DeployITDataMart.bat

Syntax:

```
DeployITDataMart.bat [srcVersion] [trgVersion]
                     [metaServerName] [metaServerPort]
                     [metaUser] [metaPass]
```

Example:

```
DeployITDataMart.bat 3.1 3.1.1 myserver 8561 sasadm Pass1
```

**Note:** *There is no parameter to specify the IT data mart name since you can only deploy the single IT data mart that has most recently been extracted.*

## An End-to-End Example

### Assumptions:

- z/OS server – ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM
- Windows machine – wintel01.pc.company.com
- ITRM 3.1 Metadata Server on port 10031
- ITRM 3.1.1 Metadata Server on port 99311
- Administrative user for each server is zosadm
- Administrative user password is zosPass1
- After installing, configuring, and deploying the 3.1.1 release of ITRM, the configuration location is: /usr/lpp/SAS/installs/ITRM311
- The location of the ExtractDeploy.jar archive file is: /usr/lpp/SAS/installs/ITRM311/Lev1/Utilities/SASITMSCoreComponents/Utilities

Now use ftp to transfer the archive file to C:\Temp on wintel01.pc.company.com, and run the jar command to extract the contents of the archive file to **C:\Temp\ExtractDeploy**.

Use the Windows Explorer to navigate to the

C:\Temp\ExtractDeploy\SASITMSCoreComponents\Utilities\metadata folder. Edit both **deploy.bat** and **extract.bat** changing the string \$EDIT: PATH-TO-SMC-ROOT\$ to C:\Program Files\SAS\SASManagementConsole\9.1. Save the changes.

Open a command window (you can submit the “cmd” command to the Windows Start menu **Run...** program item) and change directory to:

C:\Temp\ExtractDeploy\SASITMSCoreComponents\Utilities\metadata.

Begin the extract/deploy process:

#### Extract the ITMSProperty from the 3.1 ITMS repository

```
ExtractITMSProperty.bat 3.1 ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM
                        10031 zosadm zosPass1
```

#### Extract the ITMSFormula from the 3.1 ITMS repository

```
ExtractITMSFormula.bat 3.1 ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM
                        10031 zosadm zosPass1
```

**Note:** Receive error message indicating that there was no content extracted. Since this is due to the fact that there were no User Defined formulas previously defined this is acceptable.

#### Extract the IT Data Mart from the 3.1 ITMS repository

```
ExtractITDataMart.bat 3.1 "Production SMF Data for ZOSPROD1"
                        ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM 10031
                        zosadm zosPass1
```

We now have an extracted data mart and the supporting metadata that will allow it to be properly deployed to our SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 ITMS repository.

#### Deploy the 3.1 ITMSProperty metadata to the 3.1.1 ITMS repository

```
DeployITMSProperty.bat 3.1 3.1.1 ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM
                        99311 zosadm zosPass1
```

#### Deploy the 3.1 ITMSFormula metadata to the 3.1.1 ITMS repository

```
DeployITMSFormula.bat 3.1 3.1.1 ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM
                        99311 zosadm zosPass1
```

**Note:** Due to the fact that there was not any metadata extracted with the extract process, this step is not necessary. Should you choose to run it, be advised that if there is no metadata to deploy the script will fail and return an error indicating that there was no metadata to deploy. This is normal in this scenario.

#### Deploy the 3.1 ITDataMart metadata to the 3.1.1 ITMS repository

```
DeployITDataMart.bat 3.1 3.1.1 ZOSPROD1.MVS.COMPANY.COM
                        99311 zosadm zosPass1
```

We now have a SAS IT Resource Management 3.1.1 ITMS repository that contains the same metadata describing the IT data mart that was created and available in SAS IT Resource Management 3.1. The Extract and Deploy functionality has provided the methodology to move the data describing the IT data mart from one version of the ITMS repository to another. You may still need to move or copy the physical data contained in the IT data mart. If your two installations can both read and write to the file system as specified in the various IT data mart related paths, then no move or copy would be necessary.



## Appendix S — Installing SAS IT Service Level Management 2.1

Instructions for the installation and configuration of your SAS IT Service Level Management Server are included as part of the SAS IT Service Level Management Client located on the **SAS IT Management Client Components** CD, which can be found in your Installation Kit.



## Appendix T — Post-Installation Setup for the Metabase Facility

Starting with Version 7 of SAS, the SAS/EIS Metabase facility has been converted to the Version 7 Common Metadata Repository. The Common Metadata Repository is a general-purpose metadata management facility that provides common metadata services to various metadata-driven applications.

Using the Common Metadata Repository requires a one-time setup of the system repository manager. If the repository manager was set up in a previous release, it might not need to be set up again. The steps in the following sections should be completed before you attempt to use the Metabase Facility. For Metabase Facility users who were using a release prior to Version 7, using the Common Metadata Repository requires a conversion. See the Version 8 OLAP Server topic “Converting Legacy Metabases” for more information.

### Setting Up the System Repository Manager Files

**Note:** *This step sets the default location for the repository manager for your site. Individual users can specify their own repository manager location by following the steps above and not selecting the Write values to system registry check box.*

Complete the following steps to set up the necessary system repository manager files. You must have write access to SASHELP (allocate with `disp=old`) in order to specify the system repository manager.

1. Create a SAS library that will be dedicated exclusively to the storage of repository manager files. This SAS library should not be used to store other SAS files.

You can use the following DCB and SPACE attributes but other are possible: `DSORG=PS, RECFM=FS, LRECL=6144, SPACE=(TRK,(1,1))`

2. At a SAS command line, type `REPOSMGR` and then select `Setup Repository Manager`.
3. In the Repository Manager Setup window, `Library` will default to `RPOSMGR`. For `Path`, specify the fully qualified z/OS data set name (without quotes) created in Step 1 above, and then select the `Write values to system registry` check box. Then select `OK`.
4. In the resulting dialog window, select `Yes` to generate the necessary repository manager files.

This completes the setup for the System Repository Manager. You can create additional repository managers (a user repository manager, for example) by repeating the steps above and by using a different path.

### Registering the SASHELP Repository in the Repository Manager

The SASHELP repository is used in various samples. Before beginning the steps below a repository manager must be created (see previous section). Complete the following steps to register the SASHELP repository in the Repository Manager:

1. At a SAS command line, type `REPOSMGR` and then select `Repository Registration`.
2. In the Repository Registration window, select `New`.
3. In the Register Repository (New) window, type `SASHELP` (in uppercase) in the `Repository` field, and then type the fully qualified data set name without quotes where the `CORE` catalog is located in the `Path` field.

4. In the Description field, you can type any character string (for example, SASHELP Repository). Select OK to close the Register Repository (New) window. Select Close to exit the Repository Registration window.

**Note:** *Repositories cannot span multiple directories because the path cannot contain concatenated directories. If you have existing metabases in concatenated directories, you should copy the metabases to a single path that will be referenced as a repository.*

## Appendix U — Post-Installation Setup for SAS OLAP Server Software

SAS OLAP Server includes client components that are used outside of your SAS installation. These components are available on the **SAS Client-Side Components CD**, and are described below. For more information on using SAS OLAP Cube Studio and SAS OLAP Server Monitor, see the *SAS OLAP Server Administrator's Guide* in the SAS 9.1.3 Help and Documentation. For more information on the Open OLAP Client, see the online help for SAS OLAP Server. The online help also contains more information on the post-installation configuration for V8 SAS OLAP Server.

### ***Open OLAP Client for SAS/MDDB Server 3.0***

SAS OLAP Server Software includes an OLE DB provider, Open OLAP Server. The Open OLAP Server allows you to access, update, and manipulate MDDB data on your SAS System from OLE DB- and ADO-compliant applications on Windows platforms.

If you will be using the Open OLAP Server to access SAS MDDBs, you need to install only the Open OLAP Client. The component should be installed on the Windows platform where your OLE DB-compliant applications will run.

### ***SAS OLAP Cube Studio***

SAS OLAP Cube Studio, a component of SAS OLAP Server, is designed for the IT professional responsible for building and maintaining OLAP cubes in a corporate environment. SAS OLAP Cube Studio integrates with SAS Management Console and SAS Data Integration Studio to provide the tools needed to maintain the OLAP environment.

It is recommended that you install SAS OLAP Cube Studio if you will be creating and maintaining SAS OLAP cubes. The component should be installed on the Windows platform you will use to create your cubes.

### ***SAS OLAP Server Monitor for SAS Management Console***

SAS OLAP Server Monitor is a plug-in component for SAS Management Console. You use SAS OLAP Server Monitor to monitor the status of your running SAS OLAP Servers.

You need to install SAS OLAP Server Monitor if you need to monitor the status of your SAS OLAP Servers. The component should be installed on the same Windows platform as SAS Management Console.



## Appendix V — Post-Installation Setup for SAS/SECURE Software

SAS/SECURE software includes client components that you can use to create non-SAS 9.1.3 Foundation client applications which communicate with a SAS server in a secure environment. To use encryption between a non-SAS 9.1.3 Foundation client and a SAS Server with SAS/SECURE software licensed, you must install the SAS/SECURE client components on the client machine.

### ***SAS/SECURE Client for Windows***

The `secwin.exe` executable installs the files necessary for the IOM Bridge for COM to use the CryptoAPI algorithms. It also contains a TAR and ZIP file that is used to develop Java clients that utilize the encryption support.

### ***SAS/SECURE Client for Java***

The SAS/SECURE client for Java provides encryption support for Java applications. You can incorporate this support into applications that are written using the following components:

- SAS/SHARE driver for JDBC
- SAS/CONNECT driver for Java
- IOM Bridge for Java

### ***Client Components***

The SAS/SECURE client components are available on the **SAS/SECURE** CD included with your SAS Software distribution.



# Appendix W — Implementing SAS/SESSION Software

## Introduction

SAS/SESSION software enables terminal users connected to the Customer Information Control System (CICS) to communicate with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation in a z/OS environment. In reality, the user communicates with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation running in an APPC/MVS initiator. SAS 9.1.3 Foundation uses VTAM as the communication access method. Figure 1 illustrates the relationship among the various components.

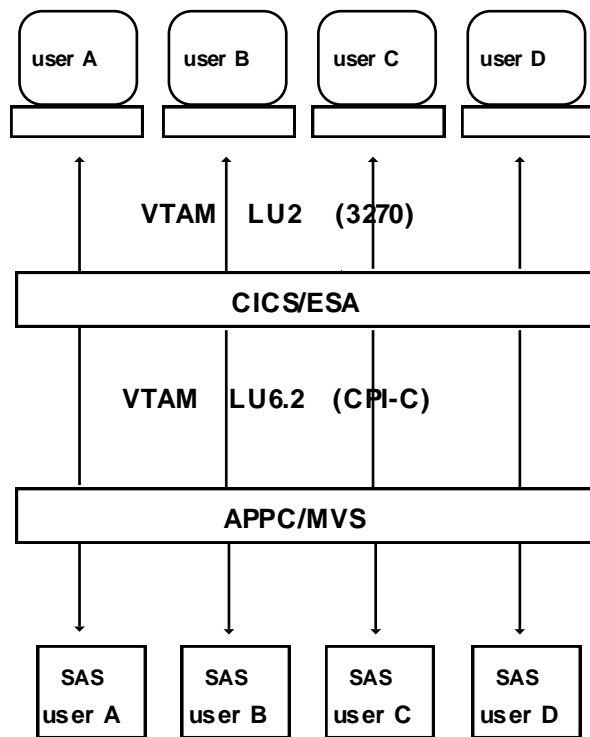


Figure 1

Installing the SAS/SESSION interface to SAS 9.1.3 Foundation consists of the following:

- ☐ defining the interface to VTAM
- ☐ defining the interface to APPC/MVS
- ☐ defining the interface to CICS.

These topics are covered in the next three sections. The discussions assume that Base SAS software, CICS, and APPC/MVS have already been installed.

Program names and argument values shown throughout this document serve as examples only. You can modify them to fit your naming conventions.

For more information on defining the interface, consult the following manuals:

- ☐ CICS Intercommunication Guide
- ☐ CICS Resource Definition Guide
- ☐ MVS Planning: APPC/MVS Management

## Defining SAS/SESSION to the VTAM System

To define SAS/SESSION to VTAM requires two steps:

- ❑ Define the two VTAM applications needed by the interface
- ❑ Define an LU Type 6.2 entry in the VTAM logon mode table.

### Define the VTAM Applications

Two VTAM applications need to be defined (or modified):

- ❑ SASSESS, to access SAS 9.1.3 Foundation through APPC/MVS
- ❑ MVSCICS, the CICS system application.

**Note:** The application names `SASSESS` and `MVSCICS` are examples for the purpose of discussion only. Contact your systems programmer to identify the correct names for your installation.

Use the VTAM APPL macro to define the applications. The VTAM application definition table contains an APPL macro expansion for each application to be used in a VTAM environment. You will need to add (or change) some parameters for the SASSESS and the MVSCICS applications:

```

SASSESS      APPL      APPC=YES,SRBEXIT=YES,SECACPT=ALREADYV,VERIFY=NONE,      *
                                DMINWNL=0,DMINWNR=10,DSESLIM=10

MVSCICS      APPL      AUTH=(ACQ),EAS=10,APPC=NO,PARSESS=YES,      *
                                ACBNAME=MVSCICS

```

Examples of these `APPL` definitions are in member `SESSAPPL` of the `&prefix.SEMISC` data set.

### Define the VTAM Logon Mode

The VTAM logon mode table contains various protocol definitions for use by applications within the VTAM system. SAS/SESSION uses an Advanced Program to Program Communication (APPC) logmode entry. If this type of entry already exists, the interface can use it.

Otherwise, use the following `MODEENT` macro. You can include the `MODEENT` macro in the existing VTAM logon mode table.

```

SASCLU62 MODEENT LOGMODE=SASCLU62,*
                                TYPE=X'00',                                *
                                FMPROF=X'13',                                *
                                TSPPROF=X'07',                                *
                                PRIPROT=X'B0',                                *
                                SECIPROT=X'B0',                                *
                                COMIPROT=X'50B1',                                *
                                PSERVIC=X'060200000000000000000002C00'

```

A copy of this mode table entry is in the `&prefix.SEMISC` data set, member `SESSMODE`.

**Note:** The mode name must match the value specified for the `Modename` parameter in the `CICS SESSION` resource. See “Defining SAS/SESSION to CICS” on page 175.

## Defining SAS/SESSION to APPC/MVS

To define SAS/SESSION to the APPC/MVS system, you need to modify the `SYS1.PARMLIB` members for APPC/MVS initialization. These members are `APPCPMxx` and `ASCHPMxx`, where the `xx` is the two-character suffix of the specific members used by your system. `APPCPMxx` defines the logical unit that corresponds to the VTAM application defined for APPC/MVS (`SASSESS`). The following example is in `&prefix.SEMISC`, member `SESSAPPM`:

### LUADD

```
ACBNAME (SASSESS)
```

```
TPDATA (SYS1.APPCTP)
```

Member `ASCHPMxx` defines a class of initiators for executing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. The definition specifies the number of instances that are available, as in this example from `&prefix.SEMISC`, member `SESSASPM`:

```
CLASSADD CLASSNAME(SASSESS) MIN(1) MAX(10) RESPGOAL(1)
```

To invoke SAS in an initiator, add the following transaction program profile definition to `SYS1.APPCTP`. The `TPNAME` parameter must correspond to the `TPNAME` specified in the CICS PARTNER resource. See “Defining SAS/SESSION to CICS” on page 175. The `CLASS` parameter value (`SASSESS`) corresponds to that for the `CLASSADD` statement in the `ASCHPMxx` parmlib member.

```
TPADD
```

```
TPNAME (SAS_SESSION)
```

```
TPSCHED_DELIMITER (DLM1)
```

```
CLASS (SASSESS)
```

```
KEEP_MESSAGE_LOG (ERROR)
```

```
JCL_DELIMITER (DLM2)
```

```
//SASSESS JOB ( ), 'SAS/SESSION (TM) '
```

```
//PROCLIB JCLLIB ORDER=(SYS2.PROCLIB) LIB CONTAINING SAS PROC
```

```
//CRTESUSR EXEC PGM=IEFBR14
```

```
//SASUSER DD DISP=(MOD,CATLG), DSN=&SYSUID..SASSESS.SASUSER,
```

```
// UNIT=DISK, SPACE=(CYL, (2,1))
```

```
//SASAUTOS DD DISP=(MOD,CATLG), DSN=&SYSUID..SASSESS.SASAUTOS,
```

```
// UNIT=DISK, SPACE=(CYL, (2,1))
```

```
//CONFIG DD DISP=(MOD,CATLG), DSN=&SYSUID..SASSESS.CONFIG,
```

```
// UNIT=DISK, SPACE=(TRK, (0,1)),
```

```
// DCB=(DSORG=PS, RECFM=FB, LRECL=80, BLKSIZE=3120)
```

```
//SASEXEC DD DISP=(MOD,CATLG), DSN=&SYSUID..SASSESS.SASEXEC,
```

```
// UNIT=DISK, SPACE=(TRK, (0,1)),
```

```
// DCB=(DSORG=PS, RECFM=FB, LRECL=80, BLKSIZE=3120)
```

```
//SAS EXEC SAS, OPTIONS='SESSION',
```

```
// SASAUTO=&SYSUID..SASSESS.SASAUTOS,
```

```
// CONFIG=&SYSUID..SASSESS.CONFIG
```

```
//SASUSER DD DISP=OLD, DSN=&SYSUID..SASSESS.SASUSER
```

```
//SASEXEC DD DISP=SHR, DSN=&SYSUID..SASSESS.SASEXEC
```

DLM2

DLM1

**Note:** Setting `KEEP_MESSAGE_LOG(ERROR)` generates a message data set when a non-zero return code is returned to CICS. Refer to the appropriate IBM documentation for more information on the `MESSAGE_DATA_SET` and the `KEEP_MESSAGE_LOG` parameters.

An example job to update your TP profile data set with this profile is in the `&prefix.SEMISC` data set, member `SESSPROF`.

## Security Considerations

Since SAS 9.1.3 Foundation executes in an APPC/MVS address space rather than under CICS, it acquires its own security environment. APPC/MVS defines this environment when CICS requests allocation of the transaction program. To create the environment, APPC/MVS uses the user ID that CICS passes. By default, CICS passes no user ID, so in this case, all input data sets used by APPC/MVS must have a universal access of read, and all output data sets must have a universal access of write.

In order for CICS to pass a user ID to APPC/MVS, you must establish a conversation security level of *already verified*. You can specify this using the `SECACPT=ALREADYV` parameter of the VTAM APPL definition for the APPC/MVS logical unit (`SASSESS`). Alternatively, if you define RACF session security between the CICS and APPC/MVS logical units, you can specify `CONVSEC(ALREADYV)` on the RACF APPCLU definition for the APPC/MVS LU.

If the security level is already verified and users do not sign on to CICS using the CESN transaction, CICS passes its default user ID on TP allocate requests. In this case, SAS 9.1.3 Foundation running under APPC/MVS has the same security as the CICS system and can access the same data sets.

Defining the security level to *already verified* and having users sign on to CICS allows users to customize their SAS environment. In order for users to use the CESN signon transaction, CICS external security must be active. The example TP profile defines four user-specific data sets: `SASUSER`, `SASAUTOS`, `CONFIG`, and `SASEXEC`. If you choose to retain these user-specific data sets in the TP profile, note that the `&SYSUID` system variable identifies them. This variable resolves to the user ID that CICS passes when issuing a TP allocation request. Therefore, if users do not sign on, or several users sign on with the same id, the potential exists for multiple users to attempt to access the same data sets for update. This could result in lockouts of users or in corrupted data.

In order to allow some users to access SAS 9.1.3 Foundation without first signing on to CICS (for example, those who do not desire any special customization), you can define a second TP profile with a key that specifies the CICS default user ID. This profile would not specify any output data sets with the `&SYSUID` system variable. For example, if the default user for your CICS system is `CICS1`, specify the following key on the `TPADD`:

```
TPADD
TPNAME(SAS_SESSION)
USERID(CICS1)
...
```

Note that to support user ID qualified TP profiles, the LU definition in your `APPCPMxx` member of `'SYS1.PARMLIB'` must specify a `TPLEVEL` of `USER`:

```
LUADD
ACBNAME(SASSESS)
TPDATA(SYS1.APPCTP)
TPLEVEL(USER)
```

## Defining SAS/SESSION to CICS

To enable communication with APPC/MVS, be sure `ISC=YES` is specified in the system initialization parameters. To define the CICS resources required for SAS/SESSION, use the CEDA transaction of the Resource Definition Online (RDO) facility of CICS. For details on any of the parameters used, refer to the appropriate IBM documentation.

All of the resources for SAS/SESSION are contained in a single GROUP in the CICS System Definition (CSD) file. You can choose any name that is acceptable for groups (for example, `SASSESS`). The following are basic components of the `SASSESS` group.

Use the `DEFINE` function of the `CEDA` transaction for these definitions.

### ❑ CONNECTION

defines the actual VTAM connection (SASC) between CICS and the APPC/MVS System. Note that the value of the Netname parameter (`SASSESS`) matches the `ACBNAME` for the `SASSESS` VTAM APPL definition.

Connection parameters required are as follows:

Connection	- SASC
Group	- SASSESS
Netname	- SASSESS
Accessmethod	- VTAM
Protocol	- APPC
Singlesess	- No
Datastream	- User
Recordformat	- U
Autoconnect	- All
Inservice	- Yes
Attachsec	- Local

## □ SESSION

defines the session (SASSESS) on which the conversations will take place between CICS and SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Note that the value of the `Connection` parameter (SASC) matches the name of the `Connection` in the preceding list. The SASC connection supports multiple sessions. Session parameters required are as follows:

Session	- SASSESS
Group	- SASSESS
Connection	- SASC
Modename	- SASCLU62
Protocol	- APPC
Maximum	- 00010,00010
Receivecount	- No
Sendcount	- No
Sendsize	- 3840
Receivesize	- 3840
Autoconnect	- All
Buildchain	- Yes
Discreq	- Yes

The Modename `SASCLU62` refers to the VTAM logon mode table entry name for APPC (LUTYPE6.2). You can specify an existing entry in the VTAM logon mode table here. See “Define the VTAM Logon Mode” on page 172 for more information.

**□ PROGRAM**

defines the transaction program delivered with SAS/SESSION to CICS. The library that the program resides on must be concatenated with the CICS Relocatable Program Library (RPL), or the load member must be copied into the existing RPL. The required parameters for the `SASSESS` program are as follows:

Program	- SASSESS
Group	- SASSESS
Language	- ASSEMBLER
Reload	- No
Resident	- No
Status	- Enabled
DataLocation	- Any

**□ TRANSACTION**

defines the transaction (`SASC`), which invokes the program `SASSESS`, as indicated by the parameters. Note that the transaction name (`SASC`) matches the value of the Transaction parameter under the `SESSION` component. Transaction parameters required are as follows:

Transaction	- SASC
Group	- SASSESS
Program	- SASSESS
Profile	- SASSESS
Status	- Enabled
TaskDataLoc	- Any

**□ PROFILE**

defines the `SASSESS` profile. This profile makes the `SASC` transaction use the terminal's alternate display size (as SAS 9.1.3 Foundation does) in all communications with the terminal. The profile also defines the modename used for APPC communication with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Profile parameters required are as follows:

Profile	- SASSESS
Group	- SASSESS
Scrnsz	- ALTERNATE
Modename	- SASCLU62

If the user already has a profile defined that meets these requirements, that profile name can be used in the transaction component instead of `SASSESS`.

## □ PARTNER

defines the `SASCSESS` partner. This partner defines the network LU name and the APPC/MVS transaction program name used to communicate with SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. It also specifies a profile that defines the modename for APPC communication. Partner parameters required are as follows:

Partner	- SASCSESS
Group	- SASSESS
Netname	- SASSESS
Profile	- SASSESS
Tpname	- SAS_SESSION

The partner name must be the concatenation of the transaction name (`SASC`), and the suffix (`SESS`). This allows the installation to define different APPC/MVS transaction program profiles for different SAS 9.1.3 Foundation configurations.

## Activating the Interface

### SAS/SESSION on APPC/MVS

To activate SAS/SESSION on APPC/MVS, complete the following steps:

1. Start APPC/MVS and its transaction scheduler under the control of the Master Scheduler, as shown in the following:

```
START APPC,APPC=xx,SUB=MSTR
```

```
START ASCH,ASCH=xx,SUB=MSTR
```

where `xx` is the suffix of your `APPCPMxx` and `ASCHPMxx` members in '`SYS1.PARMLIB`'.

If APPC/MVS and its transaction scheduler are already started, activate your members using the `SET` command, as shown in the following:

```
SET APPC=xx
```

```
SET ASCH=xx
```

where `xx` is the suffix of your `APPCPMxx` and `ASCHPMxx` members in '`SYS1.PARMLIB`'.

2. Verify that the SASSESS LU is active. You can display its status by issuing the following command:

```
DISPLAY APPC,LU,ALL,LLUN=SASSESS
```

After activating the CICS interface, the LU display should show the following:

```
PARTNERS=00001
```

3. After the CICS interface is active and users begin using SAS/SESSION, periodically display the status of the transaction programs. You can display its status by issuing the following command:

```
DISPLAY APPC,TP,ALL,LLUN=SASSESS
```

For more information on managing APPC/MVS resources, refer to the appropriate IBM documentation.

## SAS/SESSION on CICS

To activate SAS/SESSION on CICS, complete the following steps:

1. Install the group `SASSESS` by issuing the `CEDA` command:

```
CEDA INSTALL GROUP(SASSESS)
```

A message on the CEDA output display should say `Install Successful`. If it does not, check the parameters you supplied to determine the problem and reissue the command.

2. Press PF15 to terminate CEDA processing.

**Note:** *If the auto install list includes the group `SASSESS`, you do not need to issue the `CEDA` command.*

3. Issue the following command to verify the connection to APPC/MVS:

```
CEMT I CONN
```

The status of the SASC connection appears on the screen. After the group `SASSESS` is installed, the status shown should be `Ins Acq` (inservice and acquired).

Once the connection has been acquired, the sessions associated with that connection are allocated automatically.

4. Press PF15 to terminate CEMT processing.
5. Clear the display.

## Executing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation

To execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, first sign on to CICS to enter your user ID and password if required by your SAS administrator:

```
CESN
```

Then, use the SASC transaction to execute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation:

```
SASC <options>
```

where *options* are any valid SAS system options.

**Note:** *SASC refers to the CICS transaction name as defined in the Transaction component. Please see “Defining SAS/SESSION to CICS” on page 175 for more information.*

The session proceeds as if you had entered the SAS command from a TSO terminal. Refer to the *SAS 9.1 Companion for z/OS* for more information.

At the end of the session, the following message indicates that all resources associated with this transaction have been released in the CICS region:

```
SAS/SESSION complete, return code is 0
```

Refer to *z/OS Application Development: Writing Transaction Programs for APPC/MVS* for information on other return codes.



## Appendix X — Implementing SAS/SHARE Software

**Note:** For further information on implementing and using SAS/SHARE software, please refer to Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT and SAS/SHARE Software and the SAS/SHARE User's Guide which are both in the SAS OnlineDoc.

### Special Files for Use with SAS/SHARE Software

#### Customizing the Started Task JCL Procedure for a Server

**Note:** This task is required.

**STEP 1:** Edit the **SHREDITP** member of the **CNTL** data set and specify the following parameter values.

- ☐ **SASSNM=** Supply your started task procedure name. This JCL procedure name and member name will be created in the procedure library, `&prefix.PROCLIB`
- ☐ **SASSTP=** Supply your stop task procedure name. This JCL procedure name and member name will be created in the procedure library, `&prefix.PROCLIB`
- ☐ **SERVERID=** Supply your default server ID
- ☐ **PROC-DSN=** Supply your `PROCLIB`

**STEP 2:** Edit and submit the **SHRPOST** job.

This job modifies the SAS/SHARE started task JCL procedure, member **SHRPROCo1** in the **CNTL** data set, with the **SHREDITP** parameter values from Step 1 above (**SASSNM=** and **SASSTP=**) and copies the procedure to the library specified with **PROC-DSN**.

**STEP 3:** Notify the server administrator that this file has been provided.

**STEP 4:** Please refer to The SAS/Share Users Guide Appendix 2, "Creating the SAS/Share Server Environment," and Appendix 3 "Tuning Tips for Applications That Use SAS/Share Software."

#### Configuration File for a Server

Member **SRVCNFG** of the **CNTL** data set is provided as a default configuration file for a server's SAS execution. This member contains recommended SAS system option settings and is included in the **CONFIG** concatenation in the started task JCL procedure customized according to the procedure described in the previous section.

### Customizing the SAS/SHARE Autocall Macros

**Note:** This task is required.

The installed **SASSAML** data set is an **APPLSYS** macro library used by the SAS/SHARE autocall macros. This library contains the required members **DEFAULTS** and **SERVERID**. These members contain instructions with examples in comment headers for adding entries to the tables used by the macros. To use this library, you must specify its name in the **SHRMACS** autocall macro.

**STEP 1:** Edit the SHRMACS autocall macro (required).

Member `SHRMACS` in the `AUTOLIB` data set must contain the correct data set reference for the `APPLSYS` macro library. Edit this member to change the name `SAS.SASSAML` to the correct installed `&prefix.SASSAML` data set name for your installation.

**STEP 2:** Notify the server administrator that this file has been provided.

## Selecting Communications Access Methods to Use

**Note:** This task is required.

**STEP 1:** Determine the access method to use.

Communication between a SAS/SHARE server and user is handled by a part of SAS called a communications access method. There are three communications access methods available for use with this release of SAS/SHARE software under z/OS:

- ☐ cross-memory services
- ☐ TCP/IP

To use the cross-memory services access method, a server and user must be running on the same z/OS system.

You can choose to use one access method exclusively, or you can choose one as your primary access method and others as secondary access methods. If you choose to define primary and secondary access methods, SAS/SHARE software will attempt to establish a user-to-server connection using the primary access method first. If that attempt fails, SAS/SHARE software will then attempt to establish the connection using each of the secondary access methods in turn.

You should choose the access methods you will use based on your site's requirements and restrictions. The cross-memory access method is the default and is faster than the other access methods. However, the cross-memory access method can only be used for within-system communication and requires installation of a module in an authorized link list library and definition of an inactive z/OS subsystem.

**STEP 2:** Set SAS system options to specify selected access methods.

SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option `COMAMID=` specifies which access method SAS/SHARE software should use as the primary or only access method. SAS 9.1.3 Foundation options `COMAUX1=` and `COMAUX2=` specify secondary access methods. These options are specified, typically in a SAS 9.1.3 Foundation configuration file, by the SAS/SHARE Software Consultant.

The following table shows the value of these options for each access method:

Access Method	COMAMID=/COMAUX1=/COMAUX2= Value
cross-memory services	XMS
TCP/IP	TCP

For a server, these three options have essentially the same meaning; each access method specified by these options will be initialized when the server is started, making the server accessible to users via any of those access methods.

For example, for a server that is to be accessible only to users who use the cross-memory services access method, specify

```
COMAMID=XMS
COMAUX1=
COMAUX2=
```

For a server that is to be accessible to users who use either the cross-memory services access method or the TCP access method, specify

```
COMAMID=XMS
```

```
COMAUX1=TCP
```

```
COMAUX2=
```

Or

```
COMAMID=TCP
```

```
COMAUX1=XMS
```

```
COMAUX2=
```

For a user session, the access method specified by the `COMAMID=` option is the first one used to attempt to connect to a server. If the server is not found, the access method specified by the `COMAUX1=` option is used. If the server still is not found, the access method specified by the `COMAUX2=` option is used.

Note that it is not necessary to specify `COMAUX1=` or `COMAUX2=` if you do not want to specify a secondary access method.

To cause a user session to try the cross-memory services and TCP/IP access methods, in that order, specify

```
COMAMID=XMS
```

```
COMAUX1=TCP
```

## System Configuration for the Cross-Memory Access Method

### Installing the SASVXMS Load Module

**Note:** This task is required.

To use the cross-memory access method for communication between a SAS/SHARE server and user, you must copy the module `SASVXMS0` from the SAS load library data set into an authorized library. You must then rename this module `SASVXMS` (removing the 0). It is very important that you perform these two tasks in that order.

When SAS/SHARE software loads the module `SASVXMS`, it must find that module to be marked authorized, re-entrant, and reusable, and to have been loaded from an authorized library.

**The version of SASVXMS which was distributed with release 6 of SAS/SHARE software can be used ONLY with version 6. If you still have version 6 of SAS/SHARE software installed, be sure to follow the special instructions in Step 2.**

**STEP 1:** Copy `SASVXMS0` into an authorized link list library.

Copy the module `SASVXMS0` into any authorized library. In a production environment, SAS recommends you copy the `SASVXMS0` module into an authorized link list library. Alternatively, you can install this module into the link pack area. You can use any standard utility program to copy the module `SASVXMS0` from your `&prefix.LIBRARY` data set to your authorized library.



**Note:** A user abend 984 will occur if the `SASVXMS` module is not installed in an authorized library or the library is in a `STEPLIB` concatenation where one of the libraries is not authorized.

**STEP 2:** Rename `SASVXMS0`.

After copying `SASVXMS0` into the appropriate library, you must rename it. You can use any standard utility to rename the module.

If you do **not** have a version 6 of SAS/SHARE software installed, rename SASVXMS0 to SASVXMS. Specify SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option COMAMID=XMS as described earlier.

If you have version 6 of SAS/SHARE software installed, rename SASVXMS0 to SASVXMSn, where n is version of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Specify SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option COMAMID=XMSn. For example, for SAS/SHARE 9.1.3, rename SASVXMS0 to SASVXMS9 and specify COMAMID=XMS9.



**Note:** The XMS access method does not support communication between a Version 6 SAS session and a SAS/SHARE 9.1.3 server, nor does it support communication between a SAS 9.1.3 Foundation session and a Version 6 SAS/SHARE server.

*If you want to run SAS/SHARE 9.1.3 and Version 6 SAS/SHARE software concurrently, you **MUST** rename the Release 9.1.3 copy of SASVXMS0 and set the COMAMID= option appropriately. Failure to do so will generate errors, the most common being ERROR: XMS Communication Failure. Unable to locate system XVT Anchor.*

## Defining an Anchor Point

**Note:** This task is required.

To use the default cross-memory access method for communication between a SAS/SHARE server and user, you must define an anchor point. The anchor point is a place in common memory that can be located by servers and users and used to store and retrieve cross-memory communication information.



**Note:** If you have defined an anchor point for a previous release of SAS/SHARE software, it is not necessary to repeat this step now.

### STEP 1: Define an inactive z/OS subsystem.

The anchor point is specified by defining an inactive z/OS subsystem. Defining an inactive subsystem causes z/OS to create a subsystem communications vector table (SSCVT) at IPL time. The SSCVT chain is in common memory and easily accessible to the cross-memory access method routines. The SSCTSUSE field of the SSCVT is available to these routines and is used as the anchor point for their control blocks.

You should note that, although you define a subsystem to z/OS, it will never be considered active and will provide no system services because the SSCTSSVT field of the SSCVT will never be non-zero.

You can define the inactive subsystem by adding an entry to any of the following:

- ☐ the IEFJSSNT member of SYS1.LINKLIB
- ☐ an IEFSSNxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB.

Consult z/OS system initialization and tuning documentation for the details of each alternative.

Regardless of which method you choose, you must include the subsystem name and you must **not** specify an initialization routine name. Use the name SAS0 unless it conflicts with standards or conventions at your site.

### STEP 2: Set SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option SUBSYSID= to specify the inactive subsystem you defined.

The name you specify for the inactive subsystem defined as the anchor point for the cross-memory access method must also be specified as the value of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option SUBSYSID=. This option is specified, typically in a SAS 9.1.3 Foundation configuration file, by the SAS/SHARE Software Consultant. This option is described in *Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT 9.1 and SAS/SHARE 9.1*.

## System Configuration for TCP/IP

**Note:** The TCP communications access method within SAS/SHARE requires that you configure SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for communication with TCP/IP. For this reason, please ensure that you have reviewed and completed the steps in the section “System Configuration for Using SAS with TCP/IP” on page 18.

### Specify SAS 9.1.3 Foundation option TCPSEC=\_SECURE\_ for the server execution

**Note:** This task is required.

Specify the SAS 9.1.3 option TCPSEC=\_SECURE\_ in &prefix.CNTL(SRVCNFG), described in “Configuration File for a Server” on page 181. This will cause the TCP/IP access method to require users to supply a valid user ID and password for the z/OS system where the server is running in order to connect to the server.

### Testing the SAS/SHARE Server Startup

After bringing up your SAS/SHARE server, from a client SAS session execute the following code:

```
PROC OPERATE SERVER=server-ID SAPW=oopw;
    DISPLAY LIBRARY _ALL_ ;
    DISPLAY USER _ALL_ ;
    DISPLAY SERVER server-ID ;
RUN;
```

**Note:** *oopw* is the operator password provided at invocation of the SAS/SHARE server. If *OAPW=* was not provided at invocation of the SAS/SHARE server, then remove the "*SAPW=*" option from the example.

## Client-Side Components

SAS/SHARE software includes client components that are used outside of your SAS installation. SAS/SHARE client components are available on the **SAS Client-Side Components CD** included with your SAS Software distribution. Please refer to these CDs for more information.

These components are described below:

### SAS/SHARE Data Provider

The SAS/SHARE data provider enables you to access, update, and manipulate SAS data using OLE DB- and ADO-compliant applications on Windows platforms.

### SAS ODBC Driver

The SAS ODBC driver enables you to access, update, and manipulate SAS data from ODBC-compliant applications on Windows platforms.

### SAS/SHARE Driver for JDBC

The SAS/SHARE driver for JDBC enables you to write applets, applications, and servlets that access and update SAS data. The Java Tools package that includes the SAS/SHARE driver for JDBC also includes the SAS/CONNECT driver for Java. If you are writing Java programs using these interfaces, you might also want

to use the tunnel feature. This optional feature can be used with the Java applets you write to solve some common configuration problems.

## SAS/SHARE SQL Library for C

The SAS SQL Library for C provides an application programming interface (API) that enables your applications to send SQL queries and statements through a SAS/SHARE server to data on remote hosts.

### ***Special Consideration for the SECPROFILE System Option***

There are two installation requirements that must be met before the SECPROFILE system option can be used with the TCP access method:

1. The SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC routine must be installed, and must be at Level 8 or greater. See "Installing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation SVC Routine" on page 36 for details on the SAS SVC.

**Note:** *The SVC routine shipped with V9 SAS is Level 8. The SVC routine shipped with V8 SAS was Level 7.*

2. The RACF security administrator must activate the PTKTDATA class, and define at least one PTKTDATA profile for use by SAS/SHARE. If the client and server are on different systems, these steps must be done on both systems, and the profile definitions must be identical on both systems.

**Note:** *Provided that the Level 8 SVC Routine is installed (on both client and server systems, if they are different), SAS 9.1.3 Foundation clients can use the SECPROFILE option to connect to SAS Version 6, 7, or 8 SAS/SHARE servers without a password. The only restriction is that, since the SECPROFILE option does not exist in SAS versions prior to SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, the PTKTDATA profile name can only be the RACF default name. For MVS batch jobs, this is typically the characters "MVS" prefixed to the SMF system identifier of the MVS system, although it can be changed by an ICHRIX01exit.*

## Appendix Y — Implementing SAS/TOOLKIT Software

The SAS/TOOLKIT installation CNTL data set for each language contains sample JCL members that include in-stream cataloged procedures. To make it easier for your users to take advantage of the SAS/TOOLKIT product, you can customize these cataloged procedures for your site and install them in your standard cataloged procedure library.

The member APROC in the `&prefix.TLKT.ASM.CNTL` library contains the definitions of the cataloged procedures UWASM and UWLINKA. These are needed by SAS/TOOLKIT assembler users.

The member CPROC in the `&prefix.TLKT.C.CNTL` library contains the definitions of the cataloged procedures UWC, UWCLINK, and UWLINKC. These are needed by SAS/TOOLKIT SAS/C users.

In all cases, the procedures are defined as in-stream procedures. You must remove the `PEND` line as you add each member to the cataloged procedure library at your site. Also, follow the notes in the cataloged procedure text to see where you need to change data set names, entry points, etc. Any lowercase data set names should be changed to the correct data set names for your installation.

**Note:** *Some early installations of SAS 9.1.3 may see data set names beginning with `&prefix.TOOLKIT` (as opposed to `&prefix.TLKT`.) These `&prefix.TOOLKIT` names may be used as is and APROC and CPROC will use the longer names.*



## **Appendix Z — Post-Installation Configuration of SAS Solution Adapters for SAP**

### ***Configuring SAS IT Management Adapter 2.7 for SAP***

SAS IT Management Adapter 2.7 for SAP requires extensive installation setup before it can be used. Refer to the *Configuration Guide for SAS IT Management Adapter 2.7 for SAP* that is available on <http://support.sas.com/sapadapters> for detailed instructions and configuration information.



## Appendix AA — Customizing SAS System Forms

As the SAS Consultant for your site, you have the ability to customize all SAS forms for your operating system. Associated with each form is a list of available printers. Review this information if users at your site require a site customized print form for use in windowing environments, SAS/FSP, SAS/AF, or SAS/ASSIST.

**Note:** *You must have SAS/AF Software licensed to modify the site form.*

### Customizing the Printer Selection List

**Note:** *This task is optional.*

Whenever you create a SAS 9.1.3 Foundation form, a list of printers is displayed. You can modify this list to reflect only those printers available for your site. Information on changing the printer selection list has been included in a help file within the `SASHELP` library. To find out more about customizing this printer list, issue the following command from the windowing environment command line:

```
af c=sashelp.base.pdevice.cbt
```

This command displays a series of help screens that provide instructions for adding, deleting, and modifying entries in the PDEVICE Catalog.



## Appendix BB — Licensing the SAS 9.1.3 Foundation

### Introduction

Use these instructions to renew licensing for an existing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installation. Some sites might have been notified that the SETINIT received on the installation tape is already expired. If this is the case for your site, enter the SETINIT information you received as part of your installation package into the RENEWPRM member of the CNTL data set before you run the jobs to update your system.

Any change requests for your license parameters can either be called in or submitted in writing on your company's official stationery to our Customer Service Department. These requests include changes to the expiration date, as well as updates of the serial number or CPU model specification when you change your hardware.

**Note:** *Only the authorized SAS Installation Representative should change the SETINIT information. Your site designated the SAS Installation Representative when you licensed SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.*

### Processing Renewal of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation

Each SAS product you install contains a file with a list of SAS statements used to invoke the SETINIT procedure. The data supplied with the SETINIT procedure reflect your current license agreement with SAS. The SETINIT data defines the following for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation:

- the product(s) you have licensed
- the CPU on which each product is licensed
- the corresponding expiration date(s)

Expiration dates are in annual intervals of your license beginning date. When your installation renews its agreement with SAS, you will receive a new SID (Site Installation Data) to update this information.

There are two methods in which the SID information can be applied. Both methods involve saving the SID information on the system which your z/OS mainframe can access via a File Transfer Protocol (FTP).

Save the attached file for a batch install as follows:

<My Documents>\SAS Installation Data\sas91\_#####.txt where <My Documents> is accessible via the "My Documents" icon on your desktop, and ##### is the SAS software order number.

- Method 1 – Using the SAS Installation Wizard for z/OS.
  1. Please confirm that the attached file (sas91\_#####.txt) has been saved to a file location that is accessible by the computer where your SAS software is installed. The installation program requires the data contained in the attached file and will ask you for the location where you saved it. Be sure to take note of where you save the attached file.
  2. Use the SAS Installation Wizard for z/OS to retrieve your SID information from the saved location.

3. Click **Install** and when prompted, insert the **SAS Installation Components for z/OS** CD. Perform an Action R “Create Renewal Utility.”
  4. You will then be presented with a series of dialog boxes to define required installation parameters. Enter your site’s parameters in the series of dialog boxes from the jobcard information dialog box forward.
  5. After confirming that the symbolic parameters are correct, click **Yes** to invoke the batch renewal process.
  6. Confirm that the renewal jobs completed successfully. Look for the phrase ‘Siteinfo data have been updated’ in the SAS LOG.
- Method 2 – Traditional Batch Submission.
    1. Please confirm that the attached file (`sas91_XXXXXX.txt`) has been saved to a file location that is accessible by the computer where your SAS software is installed. The installation program requires the data contained in the Software Renewal Order E-mail and will ask you for the location where you saved it. Be sure to take note of where you save the attached file.
    2. Create a member as `$SID` in the `CNTL` data set.
    3. FTP the SID into the `$SID` member. If FTP access is unavailable from where the SID is saved to the mainframe, use whatever method is available to copy the contents of the SID into the `$SID` member of the `CNTL` data set.
    4. Edit lines marked by `<<<<` in the `EXPSID` job of the `CNTL` data set and submit the `EXPSID` job.
    5. Submit the `RENEW` job from the `&prefix.CNTL` data set.

Check the SAS LOG for the message that “Siteinfo data have been updated” to confirm the SID was properly applied.

If you encounter problems applying the SID, please call our Technical Support Division at (919) 677-8008. Ask the Technical Support receptionist for an MVS consultant. Please have your site number ready when you call.

If you have questions about your SID data, please call the Customer Service Department at (919) 677-8000 between 9:00 a.m. and 8:00 p.m. Eastern Time, SAS business days. Please have your site number ready when you call.

## ***SETINIT Troubleshooting***

The following is a list of common error messages and solutions that can occur when attempting to update your SETINIT information. If you continue to receive errors after attempting troubleshooting, contact the Technical Support department at SAS. (Refer to the SAS Order Information Letter enclosed in your installation package for information on contacting the Technical Support department).

If you encounter problems applying the SID, please call our Technical Support Division at (919) 677-8008. Ask the Technical Support receptionist for an MVS consultant. Please have your site number ready when you call.

- **ERROR:**

ERROR: INCORRECT INFORMATION WAS ENTERED FOR PROC SETINIT. ALL INFORMATION MUST BE ENTERED EXACTLY AS IT APPEARS ON THE PROC SETINIT DATA RECEIVED FROM SAS INSTITUTE.

Or

ERROR: INCORRECT INFORMATION WAS ENTERED FOR THE PASSWORD XXXXXXXX

**SOLUTION:**

The SETINIT information in the RENEWPRM member of the CNTL DATA SET must be entered **EXACTLY** as it appears on the paper SETINIT. If any text of the SETINIT is not the same, the above error occurs when you attempt to execute the RENEW job.

**Note:** A common mistake is typing the letter 'o' in place of the numeral zero and vice versa. Also check for any unprintable characters that might appear in the text of the SETINIT information (not '40'x).

- **ERROR:**

SAS 9.1 Foundation IS EXECUTING ON A PROCESSOR (CPU) WHOSE MODEL NAME, MODEL NUMBER, AND SERIAL NUMBER ARE NOT INCLUDED IN THE SETINIT DATA USED TO INITIALIZE SAS 9.1 Foundation LIBRARY IN USE. THIS IS PERMITTED IF THIS PROCESSOR IS A DESIGNATED BACKUP PROCESSOR FOR A LICENSED CPU. FOR THIS SITE, SAS 9.1 Foundation IS LICENSED FOR THE FOLLOWING CPU SERIAL NUMBERS:

MODEL IBM xxxx-xxxx SERIAL NUMBER yyyyyy

**SOLUTION:**

When the SETINIT is executing on a processor that is not included in the SETINIT, the above error message is issued. Be sure that SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is running on the processor indicated in the SETINIT. If your model name, number, or serial number is different than the one listed in the SETINIT, contact your SAS Customer Service Representative for an updated SETINIT.

- **ERROR:**

THE SITE VALIDATION DATA CANNOT BE UPDATED. THIS IS MOST LIKELY DUE TO THE FACT THAT THE SASHELP CATALOG IS NOT AVAILABLE IN WRITE MODE, AND/OR THAT THE SETINIT OPTION HAS NOT BEEN SPECIFIED WHEN USING THE SAS COMMAND.

**SOLUTION:**

The above error indicates that UPDATE access to the SASHELP library was denied. This is most likely due to not specifying the SETINIT option when using DISP=SHR, not having a DISP=OLD, or not having the appropriate access authority (UPDATE required) to the SASHELP library. Make sure the necessary changes were made to the RENEW job and resubmit the job.

## **OPTIONAL - Creating SASIRENW SETINIT Renewal Utility (Action R)**

If your CNTL data set does not contain a RENEW member for updating the licensing information, you can follow the steps documented in Action R to create a customized batch job for updating your licensing information.

Use this procedure to renew licensing for an existing SAS 9.1.3 Foundation installation. Some sites might have been notified that the SETINIT received on the installation tape is already expired. If this is the case for your site, enter the SETINIT information you received as part of your installation package into the `RENEWPRM` member of the CNTL data set before you run the jobs to update your system.

You will need to run this job for each `SASHELP` you have in service.

## Optional Processing Renewal of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation

**Note:** This task is required if you received an expired SETINIT. It will create a new member in your CNTL data set called SASIRENW.

### STEP 1: Supply SASEDITP parameter values.

- Blank out the `*NO*` that precedes the action name `STANDALONE-RENEW`. Verify that you have only one action value active. If more than one action is selected, a return code of 12 is set, and error messages specifying the duplicate selections are posted to `SYSPRINT` and `SYSTEM`.
- Specify the prefix of the `SASHELP` library to which the SETINIT will be applied. Specify this value as the `RENEW-PREFIX` value.



**IMPORTANT:** If Base SAS is not included in `&RENEW-PREFIX` (`&RENEW-PREFIX` is a staging prefix which requires license renewal), also supply the following:

- **RNW-BASE-PFX** as the prefix to SAS 9.1.3 Foundation containing at least a complete Base SAS. This prefix is not updated, and is only used for execution. Be sure to blank out the `*NO*` on this line to enable it.

This parameter is contained in the installation `ACTION R` grouping in `SASEDITP`.

### STEP 2: Edit the RENEWPRM member of the CNTL data set to include the updated SETINIT parameters supplied at license renewal time by SAS.

The information contained in the `RENEWPRM` member must appear **exactly** as it does on the renewal text received from SAS in order for the renewal date to be properly updated.

### STEP 3: Supply SASIHOLD parameter values.

First modify the jobcard information to reflect those values used by your site. Then modify the procedure parameters as described in the following:

- **CNTLDSN=** specifies the name of the installation `CNTL` data set you allocated using the `IEBUPDTE` job in Step 1 of “Unloading the Installation Jobs - Run IEBUPDTE” in the *Installation Instructions for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS*.
- **SASEDTP=** specifies the name of the `CNTL` data set member that contains the `SASEDITP` user site parameter values you have entered to control installation jobs. The default is `SASEDITP`.
- **PRODSEL=** is not significant for Action R. You can use the default, `PRODSEL`.
- **DISKUNI=** specifies the unit name at your site for temporary storage.
- **SYSOUT=** defaults to `*` and specifies the `SYSOUT` class you want to use for jobs.

Additional values must be updated elsewhere in the `SASIHOLD` job. Search for the word `VERIFY` to locate the following additional required changes:

- **SAS procname=** provides the name of the cataloged procedure that will invoke SAS at your site.

- **CNTLDSN=** specifies the name of the installation CNTL data set that you allocated using the **IEBUPDTE** job in Step 1 of “Unloading the Installation Jobs - Run IEBUPDTE,” in the *Installation Instructions for SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for z/OS*.
- **SYSOUT=** defaults to \* and specifies the **SYSOUT** class you want to use for jobs.
- **DISKUNIT=** specifies the unit name at your site for temporary storage.

#### **STEP 4: Submit the SASIHOLD job.**

**SASIHOLD** will generate a renewal job in the CNTL data set called **SASIRENW**. Review and submit this job to process renewal of your SAS software. Be sure to check the return code of the **SASIRENW** job to verify that products have been renewed correctly. Also, be sure to check the SAS log, regardless of the **SASIRENW** job’s return code.

**Note:** *This full process does not have to be executed every time you update your SETINIT. Once you have created the **SASIRENW** job, it resides in the CNTL data set. Your update process consists of updating the **RENEWPRM** member with the new information and resubmitting the **SASIRENW** job.*

## **Emergency SETINITs**

For emergency situations, you can download a temporary SETINIT that will extend the use of your licensed SAS Institute software products for six days. The application for acquiring the temporary SETINIT is located at

[http://www.sas.com/apps/cpi/extension\\_request\\_login.jsp](http://www.sas.com/apps/cpi/extension_request_login.jsp)

For security purposes, you will be required to enter a password, and the process for creating a password may also be started from the same Web page.



## Appendix CC — Logging Directly on to the SAS System

z/OS sites can choose to substitute SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for the standard TSO terminal monitor program. Sites can insulate users from the TSO environment by automatically invoking SAS 9.1.3 Foundation or a SAS application when users log on.

Because SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is running as its own terminal monitor program, TSO commands are not accessible to users.

This technique is intended for z/OS sites interested in restricting interactive user access to the TSO environment or shielding novice users from having to learn how to work in the mainframe environment. Sites that use this technique also save a little memory.

This appendix describes how to install and use the direct logon procedure, and provides an example. It also discusses the differences between logging onto SAS 9.1.3 Foundation using the windowing environment, using a windowing application, as well as the possibility of using the direct logon process with SAS/CONNECT software.

In most circumstances, only system administrators need to read this appendix. If you are not a system administrator and are interested in logging directly onto SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, see your SAS Installation Representative.

### ***Installing the Direct Logon Procedure***

When users log onto the system, a JCL stream called a logon procedure (logon proc) is automatically executed. Normally, the logon procedure activates the TSO terminal monitor program that sends the TSO READY prompt to the display when the logon process is complete. To make SAS 9.1.3 Foundation the logon environment, replace this procedure with a logon procedure that activates SAS 9.1.3 Foundation as the terminal monitor program.

To use this capability you must still start TSO. Any user logging onto SAS 9.1.3 Foundation must have a valid TSO user ID. However, invoking SAS 9.1.3 Foundation directly results in a reduction of approximately 50K in working set size for each user.

Complete the following steps to allow users to log directly onto SAS 9.1.3 Foundation:

- Create a logon procedure that is used by all users directly logging on to SAS 9.1.3 Foundation.
- Install the logon procedure into your site's logon procedure library.
- Specify the SAS logon procedure as each user's logon procedure.

The logon procedure that you create is similar to the standard SAS cataloged procedure. This procedure is in the PROCxx member of your site's control installation data set (CNTLDSN).

### ***Example Logon Procedure***

Example JCL for a logon procedure can be found in `&prefix.PROCLIB`.

After making any site-specific modifications, copy the PROC into a valid site logon procedure library. To enable users to access the SAS direct logon facility, modify their user IDs to use the modified logon procedure.

### ***Using Direct Logon***

You can use the direct logon technique to log onto the windowing environment of SAS 9.1.3 Foundation, or you can choose to log directly onto a windowing application. You can even use this technique in combination with SAS/CONNECT software to log directly onto SAS 9.1.3 Foundation on the mainframe from your workstation.

The purpose of combining the direct logon technique with SAS/CONNECT software is to restrict users that connect to the mainframe from having access to the TSO environment. For information on using SAS/CONNECT software, refer to *Communications Access Methods for SAS/CONNECT 9.1 and SAS/SHARE 9.1*.

## Logging onto the SAS Display Manager System

Use the example logon previously described. If you need to allocate special files for each user, such as individual SASUSER files, you must create a separate logon procedure for each user because of a system restriction.

Unless you are using the Amdahl Logon Pre-prompt Exit Version 2.7.5, you do not have any control over supplying customized SAS system options, configuration files, or the dynamic allocation of a user's SASUSER data set to a single logon procedure.

## Logging onto a Windowing Application

To log directly onto a windowing application, specify an autoexec file for the application. To do this, add a SASEXEC statement that supplies the data set name of the file containing the autoexec code to the example logon procedure. This SASEXEC statement has the following form:

```
//SASEXEC DD DISP=SHR,DSN=autoexec-file
```

For more information on modifying the way in which SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is invoked, see Chapter 1, "Initializing and Configuring SAS 9.1," in the *SAS 9.1 Companion for z/OS*.

## Restrictions

Using SAS 9.1.3 Foundation as the logon environment implies certain restrictions. For example, because SAS 9.1.3 Foundation is the terminal monitor program, users cannot execute TSO commands or access TSO facilities such as ISPF from their SAS sessions. Nor can users issue the TSO or X command from their SAS sessions to gain access to the TSO environment.

However, the SAS windowing environment contains environment-dependent statements, windows, and a full-function editor that perform many of the same utilities available in ISPF. These services are available to users that log directly onto SAS 9.1.3 Foundation. Users can dynamically allocate any files they are authorized to access using LIBNAME and FILENAME statements. They can also use the INCLUDE command to include external files and members of partitioned data sets into SAS editor windows. For more information on these and other operating-system-dependent language features, see the *SAS 9.1 National Language Support (NLS) User's Guide*.

If the logon procedure you have provided includes a DDname assigned to the internal reader, users are able to submit batch jobs from within their SAS sessions.

## Accounting Considerations

Substituting SAS 9.1.3 Foundation for the standard IBM terminal monitor program affects records produced by SMF and TSO/MON. SMF type 30, 34, and 35 records have the SAS entry name in the program name field rather than IKJEFT01 or ADFMDF03. Type 32 (TSO command) records are not produced.

If you are using LEGENT Corporation's TSO/MON product, TSO/MON system records contain complete resource usage, transaction, and response time information, but no command information. TSO/MON command detail records are not produced.





### **support.sas.com**

SAS is the world leader in providing software and services that enable customers to transform data from all areas of their business into intelligence. SAS solutions help organizations make better, more informed decisions and maximize customer, supplier, and organizational relationships. For more than 30 years, SAS has been giving customers around the world The Power to Know®. Visit us at **www.sas.com**.